OWNER'S HANDBOOK



CITROËN C4

CITROËN

MyCITROËN

On-line owner's handbook

You can find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCitroën".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with CITROËN.

Referring to the owner's handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



If the "MyCitroën" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com

Select:

- The Vehicle documentation link in the home page (no registration is needed),
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

You have access to your handbook on line, together with the latest information, identified by the symbol:



We draw your attention to the following...

Your vehicle is fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on the trim level, version and the specifications for the country in which it is sold.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system. Please note this specific warning and contact a CITROËN dealer to be shown the recommended equipment and accessories.

Key


safety warning


additional information


contributes to the protection of the environment


programming a function with the configuration menu


refer to the page indicated

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,

a complete product range,

bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,

for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,

getting to know each system,

each control, each setting,

makes your trips, your journeys

more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

CONTENTS

FAMILIARISATION 4 ➔ 25

ECO-DRIVING 26 ➔ 27

1 - MONITORING 28 ➔ 48

Instrument panels 28
Rev counter 31
Warning and indicator lamps 32
Indicators 43
Time and units 46
Customisation 48

2 - MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS 49 ➔ 60

Monochrome screen A 49
Monochrome screen C 51
Colour screen 55
Trip computer 57

3 - COMFORT 61 ➔ 78

Ventilation 61
Manual air conditioning 63
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 65
Front demist - defrost 69
Rear screen demist - defrost 69
Front seats 70
Rear seats 75
Mirrors 76
Steering wheel adjustment 78

4 - ACCESS 79 ➔ 97

Remote control key 79
Alarm 88
Doors 90
Boot 91
Electric windows 92
Panoramic sunroof 94
Fuel tank 95
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 97

5 - VISIBILITY 98 ➔ 111

Lighting controls 98
Automatic illumination of headlamps 102
Welcome lighting 103
Headlamp adjustment 104
Directional lighting 105
Wiper controls 107
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 108
Courtesy lamps 110
Interior mood lighting 111
Boot lamp 111

6 - FITTINGS 112 ➔ 124

Interior fittings 112
Centre consoles 115
Front armrest 116
Boot fittings 121
Luggage cover (enterprise version) 124

7 - CHILD SAFETY 125 ➔ 138

Child seats 125
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 127
ISOFIX child seats 134
Child lock 138

CONTENTS

8 - SAFETY 139 ➔ 149

Direction indicators 139
Hazard warning lamps 139
Horn 139
Braking assistance systems 140
Trajectory control systems (ESP) 141
Emergency or assistance call 142
Front seat belts 143
Airbags 146

9 - DRIVING 150 ➔ 183

Electric parking brake 150
Manual parking brake 157
Manual gearbox 157
Electronic gearbox 158
Automatic gearbox 161
Hill start assist 164
Gear efficiency indicator 165
Tyre under-inflation detection 166
Stop & Start 168
Lane departure warning system 171
Blind spot sensors 172
Speed limiter 176
Cruise control 178
Parking space sensors 180
Parking sensors 182

10 - CHECKS 184 ➔ 192

Bonnet 185
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 186
Petrol engines 187
Diesel engines 188
Checking levels 189
Checks 191

11 - PRACTICAL INFORMATION 193 ➔ 223

Temporary puncture repair kit 193
Changing a wheel 198
Snow chains 202
Changing a bulb 203
Changing a fuse 209
12 V battery 213
Energy economy mode 216
Changing a wiper blade 216
Fitting roof bars 217
Very cold climate screen 217
Towing the vehicle 218
Towing a trailer 220
Audio pre-equipment 221
Accessories 222

12 - TECHNICAL DATA 224 ➔ 232

Petrol engines 224
Petrol weights 225
Diesel engines 226
Diesel weights 227
Dimensions 230
Identification markings 231

AUDIO and TELEMATICS 233 ➔ 322

Emergency or assistance 233
eMyWay 235
Audio system 289

VISUAL SEARCH 323 ➔ 326

ALPHABETICAL INDEX 327 ➔ 331

EXTERIOR

Welcome lighting

This additional exterior and interior lighting, controlled remotely, makes your approach to the vehicle easier when the light is poor.

⏭ 103

Stop & Start system

This system puts the engine temporarily on standby during stops in the traffic (traffic lights, traffic jams, etc...). The engine restarts automatically as soon as you want to move off. The Stop & Start system allows reductions of fuel consumption and exhaust emissions, as well as noise levels when stationary.

⏭ 168



Parking sensors

This system measures the size of a free parking space between two vehicles or obstacles.

⏭ 180

Directional lighting

This lighting automatically provides additional visibility when cornering.

⏭ 105

Cornering lighting

At low speed, this lighting automatically provides additional visibility when cornering, at junctions, when parking... making use of the corresponding front foglamp.

⏭ 106

Blind spot sensors

In certain conditions, this system detects the presence of a vehicle in the blind spot. It informs you by means of a warning lamp in the corresponding door mirror.

⏭ 172

Panoramic sunroof

This roof provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.

⏭ 94



Under-inflation detection

This system continuously monitors the pressures in the tyres and alerts you in the event of under-inflation.

⏭ 166

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit is a complete system, consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, for the temporary repair of a tyre.

⏭ 193

2-button remote control



A. Unfolding / Folding the key (first press this button).

Complete or selective unlocking of the vehicle (rapid flashing of the direction indicators).

Normal locking (press once; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

⏭ 79, 81

3-button remote control



A. Folding/unfolding the key (first press this button).

Complete or selective unlocking of the vehicle (rapid flashing of the direction indicators).

Opening the windows (hold until the desired level is reached).

Selective unlocking of the boot.

Normal locking (press once; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

Closing the windows (hold until the desired level is reached).

⏭ 80, 81

Welcome lighting



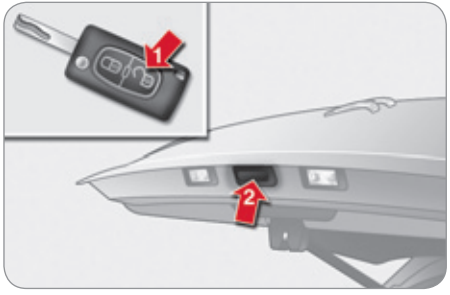
When a sensor detects a low level of light, the remote switching on of the dipped beam headlamps, the side-lamps and the side spotlamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier.

In the same way, the passenger compartment lighting, such as the courtesy lamps and the footwell lamps, comes on.

⏭ 103

Boot

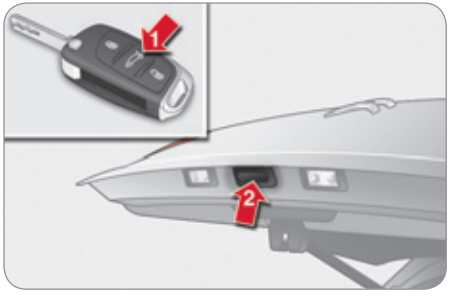
2-button remote control



1. Unlocking the vehicle.
2. Opening the boot.

⏭ 79, 91

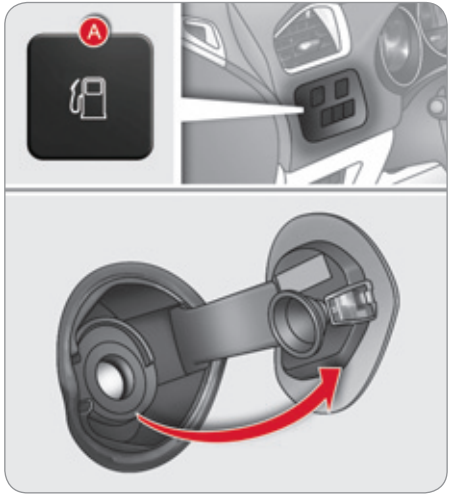
3-button remote control



1. Selective unlocking of the boot.
2. Opening the boot.

⏭ 80, 91

Fuel tank



A. Opening the fuel filler flap.
Capacity of the fuel tank: approximately 60 litres.

⏭ 95

Panoramic sunroof



1. Opening the blind (four positions possible).
2. Closing the blind (initial position).

⏭ 94

Interior mood lighting

This dimmed lighting of the passenger compartment improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

⏭ 111

Audio and communication systems

These systems benefit from the following technologies: radio, CD player, USB player, Bluetooth system, satellite navigation system with colour screen, auxiliary sockets.

Radio

⏭ 289

eMyWay satellite navigation system

⏭ 235



Massage system

This system provides a lumbar massage for a period of 60 minutes. The massage is done in 6 cycles of 10 minutes duration each.

⏭ 73

Electronic gearbox

This system offers driving combining a fully automatic mode and a manual mode.

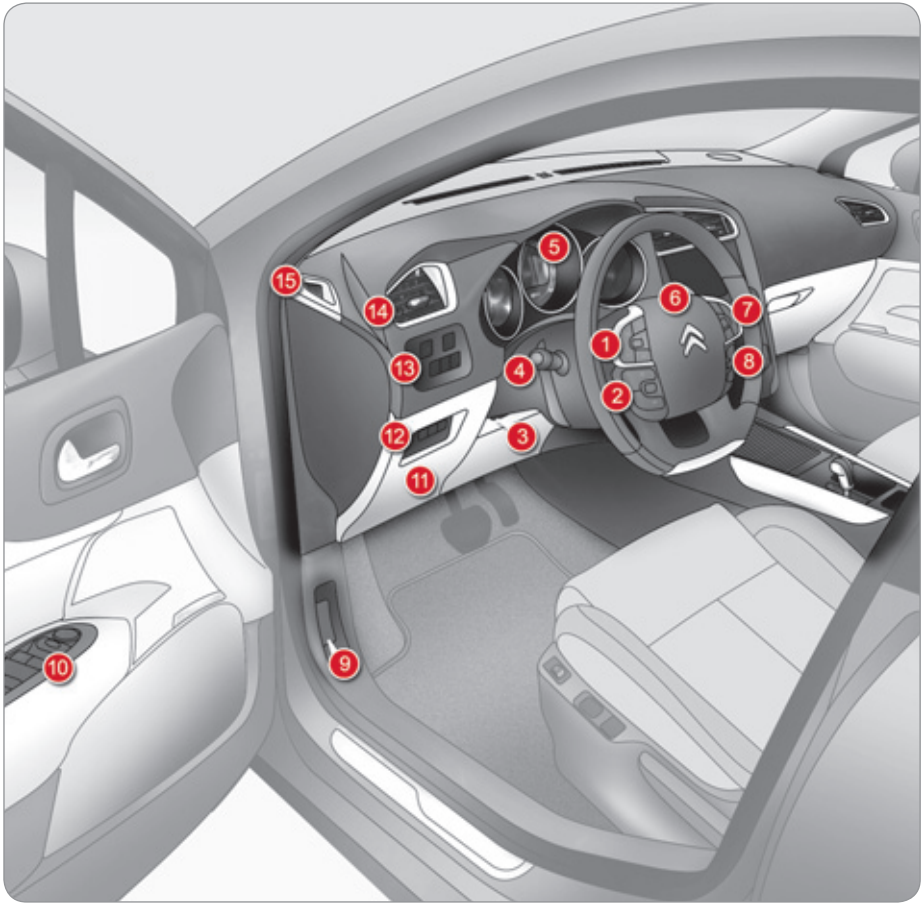
⏭ 158

Electric parking brake

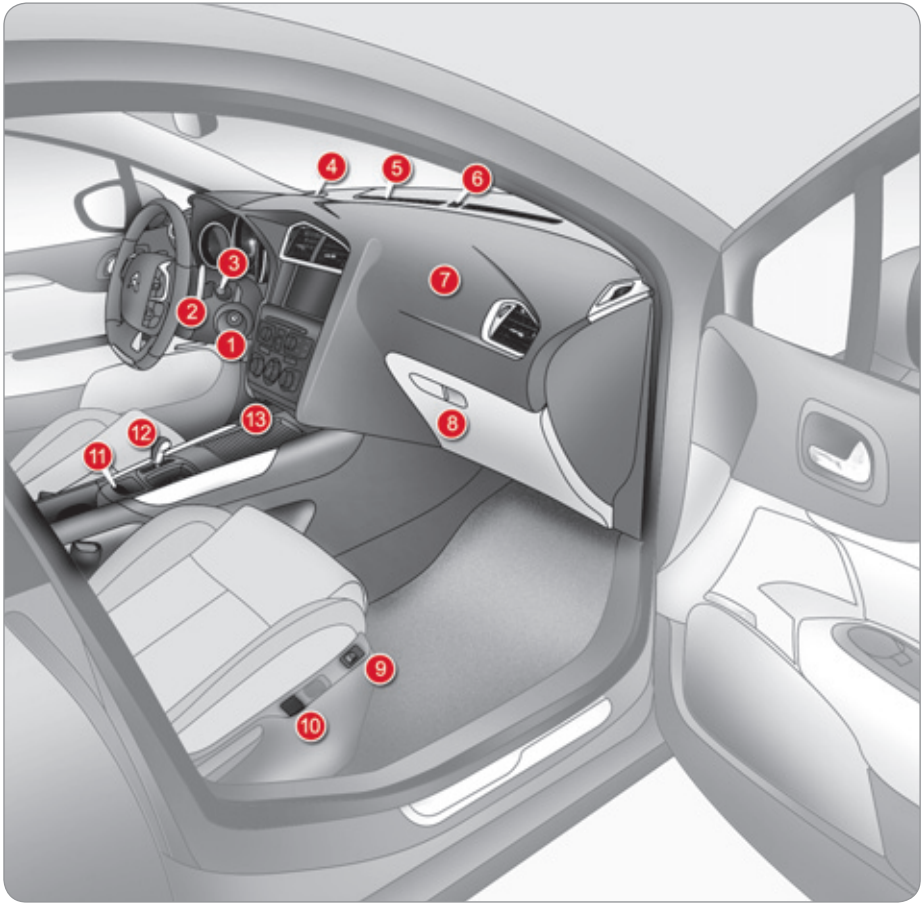
It combines the functions of automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release when moving off.

Manual application and release remains possible.

⏭ 150



1. Cruise control / speed limiter switches.
2. Controls for optional functions.
3. Steering wheel adjustment control.
4. Lighting and direction indicator control stalk.
5. Instrument panel.
6. Driver's airbag.
   Horn.
7. Controls for audio and telematic system.
8. Controls for Bluetooth system or telephone.
9. Bonnet release.
10. Door mirror controls.
    Electric window controls.
11. Fusebox.
12. Manual headlamp height adjustment
    Lower side switch panel.
13. Fuel filler flap opening button.
    Upper side switch panel.
14. Side adjustable air vent.
15. Front side window demisting vent.



1. Steering lock and ignition.
2. Steering mounted control paddles for the electronic gearbox.
3. Wiper / screenwash / trip computer control stalk.
4. Speaker (tweeter).
5. Windscreen demisting vent.
6. Sunshine sensor.
7. Passenger's airbag.
8. Glove box / Audio/video sockets / Passenger's airbag deactivation switch.
9. Heated seat control.
10. Lumbar massage control.
11. Electric parking brake.
12. Gear lever, electronic gearbox.
13. Large multifunctional storage unit.



A. Rear view mirror.
B. Emergency call / Warning lamps display for front passenger's airbag and seat belt / Assistance call.
C. Courtesy lamp / Map reading lamps / Interior mood lighting.
D. Microphone for audio and telematic system.
E. Panoramic sunroof blind control.

1. Central adjustable air vents.
2. Monochrome screen and small storage box with flap or colour screen.
3. Audio system or eMyWay satellite navigation system.
4. Central switch panel.
5. Heating / air conditioning controls.
6. USB port / auxiliary Jack socket / 12 V accessory socket.
7. Gear lever, manual or automatic gearbox.
8. Manual parking brake
9. Large open storage or front armrest.



Driver's seat

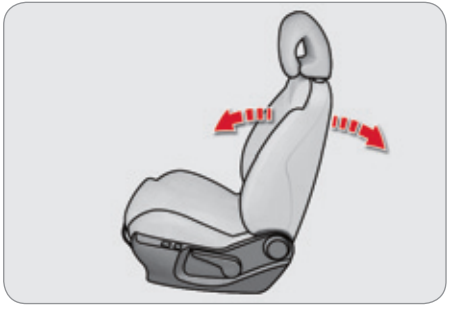
Forwards-backwards



Height



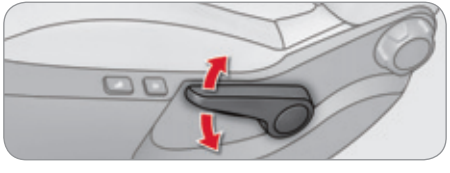
Seat backrest angle



Manual adjustment

⏭ 70

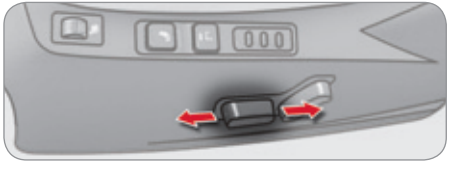


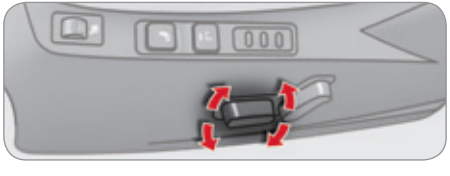


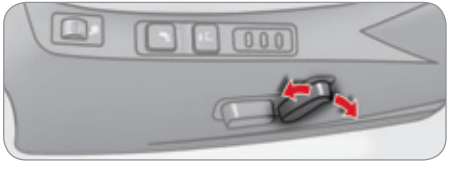


Electric adjustment

⏭ 71

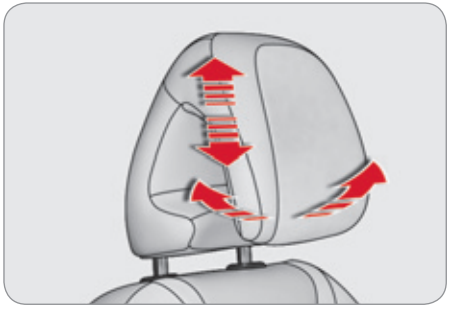






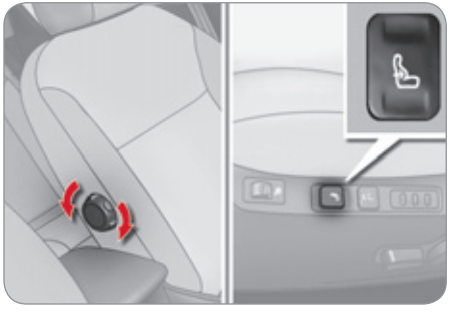
Front seats

Head restraint height and angle



⏭ 72

Lumbar



⏭ 73

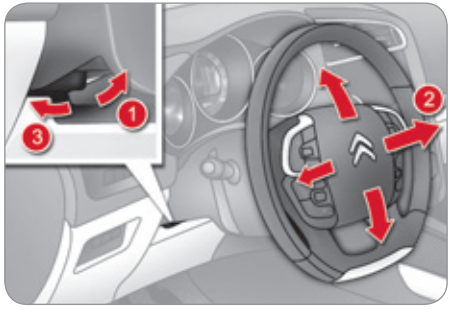
Other functions available...

Lumbar massage.

Storing driving positions (driver's electric seat).

Heated seats.

Steering wheel adjustment

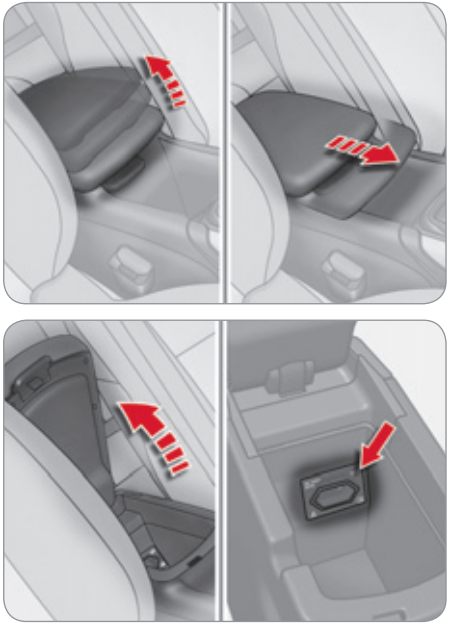


1. Release the adjustment mechanism.
2. Adjust for height and reach.
3. Lock the adjustment mechanism.

As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out when stationary.

⏭ 78

Front armrest

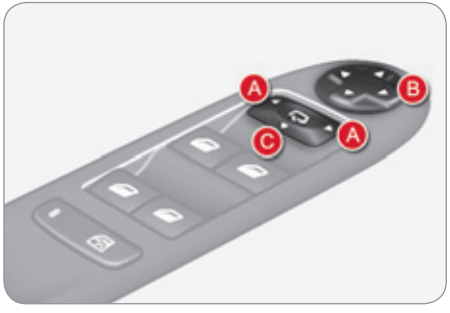


For your comfort, the front armrest can be adjusted for longitudinal position and for height, depending on version.

It also has a storage compartment; this may be equipped with a 230 V / 50 Hz socket.

⏭ 116, 117

Door mirrors



Adjustment

A. Selection of the mirror to be adjusted.
B. Adjustment of the position of the mirror in the four directions.
C. De-selection of the mirror.

⏭ 76

Other functions available...
Folding / Unfolding.
Automatic tilting of the mirror in reverse gear for parking.
Blind spot sensors.

Rear view mirror



Manual day/night model

1. Selection of the "day" position of the mirror.
2. Adjustment of the mirror.

⏭ 78

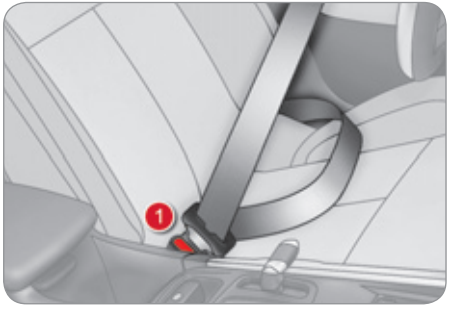


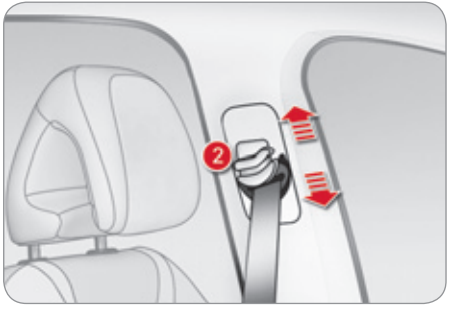
Automatic day/night model

A. Brightness detection in automatic day/night mode.
B. Adjustment of the mirror.

⏭ 78

Front seat belts

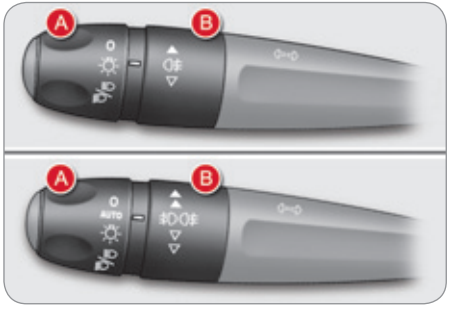




1. Fastening the buckle.
2. Height adjustment.

⏭ 143

Lighting



Ring A

0 Lighting off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped / main beam headlamps.

Ring B

Rear foglamp.

or

Front and rear foglamps.

⏭ 99

Direction indicators



Raise or lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash for as long as the stalk remains in this position.

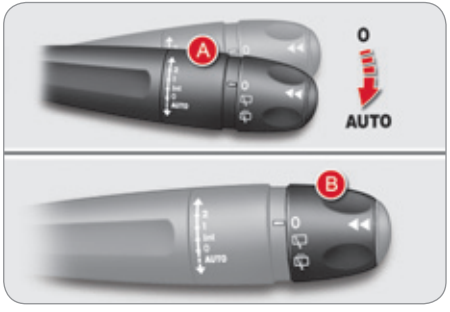
Three flashes

Press the lighting stalk up or down once, without passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash three times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

⏭ 139

Wipers



Stalk A: windscreen wipers

⏭ 107

Switching "AUTO" on / off

☞ Press the stalk downwards and release.

⏭ 108

Ring B: rear wiper

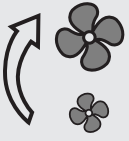
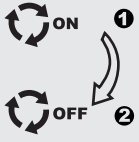
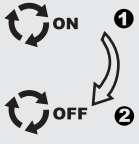
0 Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

⏭ 109

Recommended interior settings

I require...	Manual Air Conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Air recirculation / Intake of outside air	Temperature	Manual A/C
HOT					—
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: we recommend use of one of the three fully automatic modes by pressing the **"AUTO"** button.

Instrument panels





A. With the ignition on, the bars indicate the level of fuel remaining.

B. With the engine running, its associated low level warning lamp should go off.

C. With the ignition on, the oil level indicator should show for a few seconds that the level is OK or correct, depending on version.

If the levels are not correct, top up the levels which are low.

⏭ 28

Warning lamps

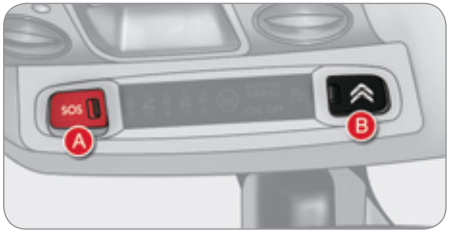


1. With the ignition on, the orange and red warning lamps come on.
2. With the engine running, these warning lamps should go off.

If warning lamps remain on, refer to the page concerned.

⏭ 32

Central switch panel

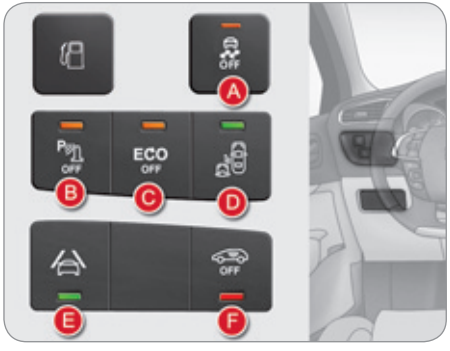


A. Make an emergency call.
⏭ 142, 233
B. Access to CITROËN services.
⏭ 142, 233



C. Hazard warning.
⏭ 139
D. Central locking.
⏭ 86
E. Black panel (black screen).
⏭ 47

Side switch panel



Illumination of the lamp indicates the state of the system.

A. Deactivation of the ESP/ASR system.
⏭ 141

B. Deactivation of the parking sensors.
⏭ 183

C. Deactivation of the Stop & Start system.
⏭ 169

D. Activation of the blind spot sensor system.
⏭ 172

E. Activation of the lane departure warning system.
⏭ 171

F. Deactivation of the volumetric alarm protection.
⏭ 88

Multifunction steering wheel

Cruise control / speed limiter controls

⏭ 178, 176



Optional function controls

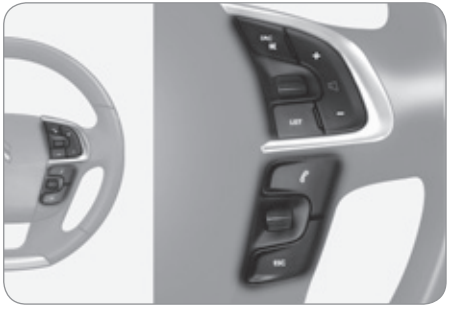
1. Black panel (black screen).
⏭ 47

2. Dashboard lighting dimmer.
⏭ 47

3. Courtesy lamp on / off.
⏭ 110
or
Parking space sensors.
⏭ 180

Audio system controls

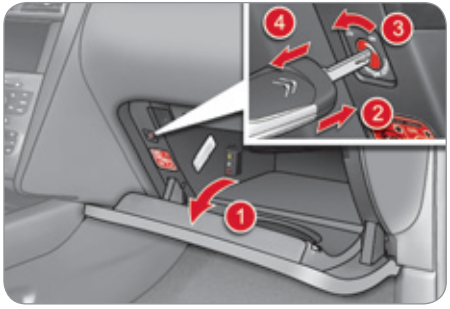
⏭ 238, 291



Bluetooth system or telephone controls

⏭ 238, 291

Passenger's front airbag



1. Open the glove box.
2. Insert the key.
3. Select the position:
   "OFF" (deactivation), with "rear facing" child seat,
   "ON" (activation), with front passenger or "forwards facing" child seat.
4. Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

⏭ 147

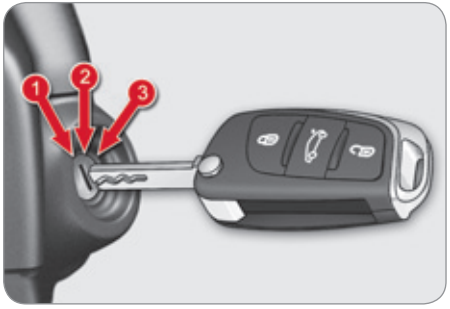
Seat belts and passenger's front airbag



A. Left hand front seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
B. Right hand front seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
C. Right hand rear seat belt unfastened warning lamp.
D. Centre rear seat belt unfastened warning lamp.
E. Left hand rear seat belt unfastened warning lamp.
F. Passenger's front airbag deactivated warning lamp.
G. Passenger's front airbag activated warning lamp.

⏭ 143, 147

Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

When switching the ignition on and off, the speedometer needle and the rev counter and fuel gauge bars travel full sweep and return to 0.

⏭ 82

Electric parking brake

Manual application / release



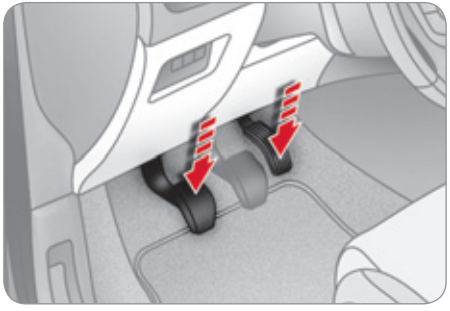
Manual application of the parking brake is possible by **pulling** the control lever **A**.

With the ignition on, **manual release** of the parking brake is possible by **pressing the brake pedal** and **pulling then releasing** the control lever **A**.

With the engine running, on opening the driver's door there is an audible warning; apply the parking brake manually.

Do not leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on; they might release the parking brake.

Automatic application / release



Press the accelerator pedal and let the clutch pedal up (manual gearbox), the parking brake is released automatically and progressively as you move off.

With the vehicle at rest, on switching off the engine the parking brake is applied automatically.

AUTO P OFF

If this warning lamp is on in the instrument panel, the **automatic application / release** is **deactivated**; apply and release the parking brake manually.



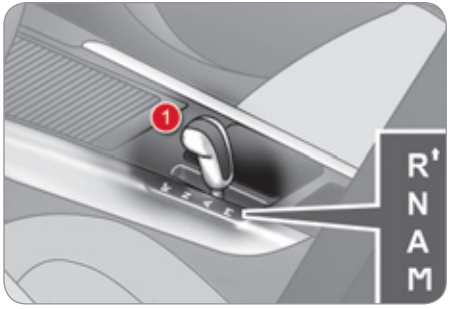


Before leaving the vehicle, check that the brake warning lamp in the instrument panel and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** are **on fixed (not flashing)**.

If you are towing a trailer or caravan or if the slope might vary (transport on a ferry, lorry, towing...) make a maximum manual application with a long pull on the control lever **A** to immobilise the vehicle.

⏭ 150

Electronic gearbox





This 6-speed gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

1. Gear lever.
2. Steering mounted **"-"** control paddle.
3. Steering mounted **"+"** control paddle.

Displays in the instrument panel



The gear engaged or the driving mode selected appears in the instrument panel screen.

N. Neutral.
R. Reverse.
1 to 6. Gears engaged.
AUTO. Automated mode.

Moving off



- Select position **N** and press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.
- Engage first gear by pulling the gear lever **1** towards position **A** or **M**,

  or

  engage reverse by pushing the gear lever **1** towards position **R**.
- Release the parking brake.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal then accelerate.

⏭ 158

Automatic gearbox



This six-speed gearbox offers the choice between the comfort of automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gearchanging.

1. Gear lever.
2. **"S" (sport)** button.
3. **"❄" (snow)** button.

Displays in the instrument panel



The driving mode selected and/or the gear engaged appear in the left hand instrument panel screen.

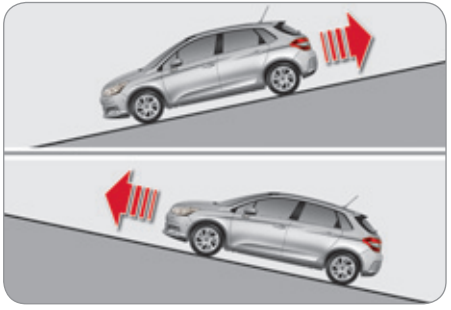
P. Park.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
D. Drive (automatic operation).
S. **Sport** programme.
❄. **Snow** programme.
1 to 6. Gear engaged.
-. Invalid value in manual operation.

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.
☞ Then select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal, then accelerate away.

⏭ 161

Hill start assist



Your vehicle is fitted with a system which holds your vehicle stationary momentarily, the time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator, to help with moving off on a gradient.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain conditions of gradient are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

Do not get out of the vehicle during the hill start assist temporary holding phase.

⏭ 164

Stop & Start

Engine going into STOP mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine is put into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox;** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox;** at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or you put the gear lever in position **N**.

In some circumstances the STOP mode may not be available; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

⏭ 168

Engine going into START mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox;** when you fully depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox;**
  - with the gear lever in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you change to position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse.

In some circumstances, START mode may engage automatically; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes then goes off.

⏭ 169

Deactivation / Reactivation



You can deactivate the system at any time by pressing the **"ECO OFF"** button; the button's warning lamp comes on.

The system is reactivated automatically every time you start the engine with the key.

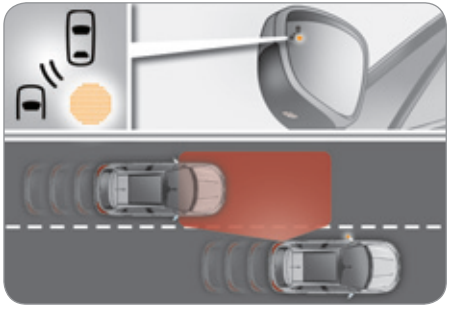
Before refuelling or doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition with the key.

⏭ 169

Blind spot sensors



☞ Activate the function by pressing control switch **A**; the button's warning lamp comes on.



The warning lamp located in the door mirror comes on to warn you of the arrival of a vehicle in the blind spot detection zone.

⏭ 172

Parking space sensors

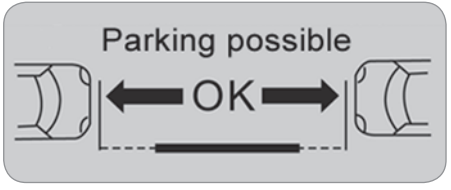


☞ Select the function by pressing control switch **B**; the corresponding warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

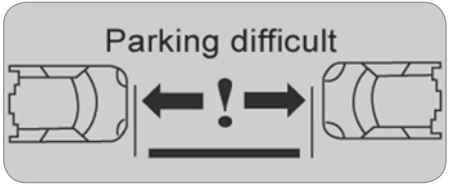
☞ Operate the direction indicators on the side with the space to be measured; a message appears to confirm measurement is in progress.

☞ Drive at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) during measurement.

One of these messages appears, to indicate the level of difficulty of the manouevre:



- **Parking possible.**



- **Parking difficult.**



- **Parking not advised.**

⏭ 180

Speed limiter "LIMIT"



1. Limiter mode On / Off.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Off.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds.

⏭ 175

The values must be set with the engine running.

⏭ 176

Cruise control "CRUISE"



1. Cruise control mode On / Off.
2. Programme a speed / Decrease the programmed value.
3. Programme a speed / Increase the programmed value.
4. Cruise control Off / Resume.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds.

⏭ 175

In order to be programmed or activated, the vehicle speed must be higher than 25 mph (40 km/h), with at least fourth gear engaged on a manual gearbox (second gear for an electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox).

⏭ 178

Display in the instrument panel



The cruise control or speed limiter mode appears in the instrument panel when it is selected.

CRUISE **Cruise control**

LIMIT **Speed limiter**

ECO-DRIVING

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to change up: as soon as the indication to change up is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

With an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended by the manufacturer.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

TWO-TONE INSTRUMENT PANEL WITHOUT AUDIO SYSTEM



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.
6. Service indicator
   (miles or km) then,
   total mileage recorder.
   These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
   Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
7. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp (**a** or **b** according to version).
9. Time.

Control buttons

A. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).

B. Reminder of servicing information
Reset service indicator or trip mileage recorder.

A and **B.** Setting the time and selecting units.

TWO-TONE INSTRUMENT PANEL WITH AUDIO SYSTEM



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator
   (miles or km) then,
   total mileage recorder.
   These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
   Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
8. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
9. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp (**a** or **b** according to version).
10. Range (miles or km).

Control buttons

A. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).

B. Reminder of the servicing information
Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

CUSTOMISABLE COLOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL WITH AUDIO SYSTEM OR NAVIGATION SYSTEM

1



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator
   (miles or km) then,
   total mileage recorder.
   These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
   Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
8. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
9. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
10. Range (miles or km).

Control buttons

A. Dial COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the dials.
B. Screen COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the screens.
C. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
D. Reminder of the servicing information
   Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

Rev counter



Approaching the maximum engine speed, the bars are displayed in red and flash, to indicate to you the need to change up a gear.

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp in question.

Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction which requires action on the part of the driver.

The warning comes on in the instrument panel.

If your vehicle has a screen, a warning lamp coming on is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the problem.

If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed red.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The application or release of the electric parking brake was interrupted.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on level ground, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Electric parking brake malfunction**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Automatic application/release is no longer possible. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. The parking brake can be released manually using the emergency release procedure. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.
	**Door(s) open**	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	**Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened***	fixed, then flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver or front passenger has not buckled or has unbuckled their seat belt.	Pull on the belt in question and insert the tongue in the buckle. This warning repeats the seat belt information given by the roof console warning lamps.
			At least one rear passenger has unbuckled their seat belt.	

* According to country.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
SERVICE	**Service**	temporarily, accompanied by a message.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the problem by reading the message displayed in the screen, such as, for example: - the opening of the doors, boot or bonnet, - the engine oil level, - the remote control battery, - a fault with the tyre pressure monitoring system. For any other malfunctions, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message displayed in the screen and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Foot on the brake pedal**	fixed.	The brake pedal is not pressed.	With an electronic gearbox, press the brake pedal to start the engine (lever in position **N**). If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
		flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on a rising incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the electric parking brake.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	**Low fuel level**	fixed, accompanied by and audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR)**	flashing.	The ESP/ASR regulation is active.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed, associated with illumination of the indicator lamp in the "**ESP OFF**" button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The ESP/ASR or hill start assist system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Power steering**	fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
+ SERVICE		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Foot on the clutch****	fixed.	In the STOP mode of Stop & Start, changing to START mode is refused because the clutch pedal is not fully down.	You must declutch fully to allow the change to engine START mode.

** Only on the two-tone instrument panel without audio system.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Airbags**	temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Water in Diesel**	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Particle emissions filter (Diesel)**	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal message on the risk of blockage of the particle emissions filter.	This indicates that the particle emissions filter is starting to become saturated.	As soon as driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
		fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and and a message that the particle emissions filter additive level is too low.	This indicates the low level of the additive reservoir.	Have the reservoir topped up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation. It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Hazard warning lamps**	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk again to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Parking brake**	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the parking brake, refer to the "Parking brake" and "Electric parking brake" sections.
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric brake control. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the climatic conditions (up to about thirty seconds in extreme climatic conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control is pushed downwards.	Automatic front wiping is activated. To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.
	**Lighting dimmer**	fixed.	The lighting dimmer is making an adjustment.	You can adjust the level of illumination of the instruments between 1 and 16.
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a "rear facing" child seat.	Move the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, you can install a "rear facing" child seat.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section.
	**Parking space sensors**	fixed.	The parking space sensors function is selected.	To start measurement, operate the direction indicator on the side of the space to be measured, and do not exceed 12 mph (20 km/h). A message is displayed once the measurement has been completed.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the instrument panel and/or seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the "**OFF**" position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.	Set the control to the "**ON**" position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rear-facing position.

Engine oil level indicator



This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the service information.

The vehicle must be on level ground and the engine must have been off for more than 30 minutes for this level check to be accurate.

Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL"** or the display of a specific message in the instrument panel, coupled with the service warning lamp and accompanied by an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

Oil level indicator error



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL--"** or the display of a specific message in the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.



There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level (risk of damage to the engine),
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the correct grade of oil for your engine.

Service indicator

This information is displayed for a few seconds after switching on the ignition. It informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last service indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.



More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the instrument panel central screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line or a specific message in the instrument panel central screen indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

For example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the type of driving.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the **".../000"** trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the screen indicates **"=/0"** and the spanner disappears, release the button.

This operation cannot be carried out while a reminder of the servicing information is being displayed.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

Recalling the service information

You can recall the service information at any time.

- Briefly press the **".../000"** trip distance recorder zero reset button.

  The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder



Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder



Measures the distance travelled since it was last reset to zero by the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

Setting the time and the time format in the instrument panel without audio system



On the two-tone instrument panel without audio system, to adjust the time, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the minutes flash,

☞ press **A** to increase the minutes or **B** to reduce the minutes,

☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the hours flash,

☞ press **A** to increase the hours or **B** to reduce the hours,

☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: 24 H or 12 H is displayed and flashes,

☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the format,

☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from time setting.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display.

Setting units in the instrument panel without audio system

On the two-tone instrument panel without audio system, to change the display units, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously for three seconds: km/h or mph flashes,

☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the units,

☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from setting units.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display

Setting the time and units in the multifunction screen

The other instrument panels are associated with an audio system and a multifunction screen. Refer to the corresponding screens.

Lighting dimmer



Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on in night mode.

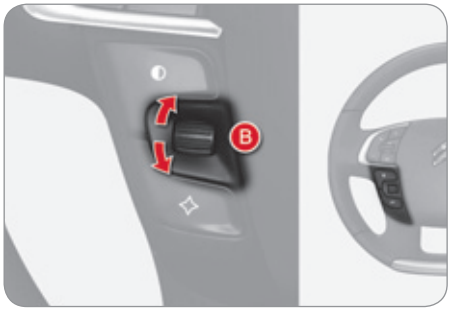
Activation

- Press button **A** to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it.

or

- When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it.
- When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

This indicator and the lighting value appear in the middle of the instrument panel during adjustment to show the lighting level compared to the 16 levels available.



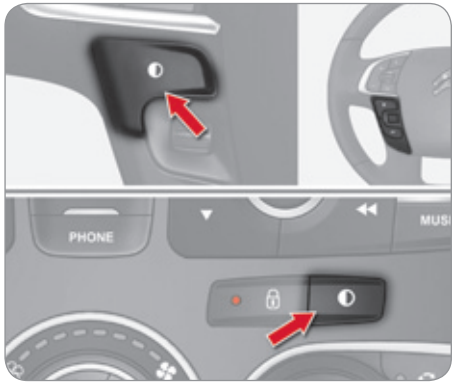
You can also modify the level of lighting by turning the thumb wheel **B**, located on the left of the steering wheel:

- upwards; to reduce the level,
- downwards; to increase the level.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button or turning the thumb wheel does not have any effect.

Black panel (black screen)



System allowing certain screens to be switched off for night driving.

The instrument panel remains on with the vehicle speed, electronic or automatic gearbox gear selected, cruise control or speed limiter information, if in use, and the low fuel alerts as appropriate.

If there is an alert or a change in a function or to a setting, the black panel mode is interrupted.

Activation

- With the vehicle lighting on, press this button again to activate the black panel.
- Press once more to illuminate on the various screens again.

Customising the instrument panel colours



In the instrument panel, you can change the colour of its dials (button **A**) independently from that of the screens (button **B**).

There are five colour variants, from white to blue.

☞ press the appropriate button as many times as needed to obtain the desired colour.

Customising the polyphonic sounds

This menu allows you to choose a family of polyphonic sounds from the four available. These sounds are grouped together in a family and are adapted to suit the situation and context (alert, confirmation, rejection, direction indicators, lighting left on, key in ignition...).



For the customisable colour instrument panel with audio or navigation system

☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the main menu.

☞ Select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu and confirm.

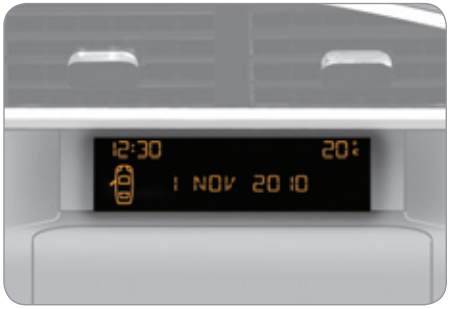
☞ Select the "Choice of sounds" line and confirm.

☞ Select the desired family of sounds and confirm.

☞ Save the modifications by confirming "OK".

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out these operation when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A



Displays in the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- current audio source,
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ button **A** to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- ☞ the **"OK"** button to confirm,

  or

- ☞ the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - "RADIO",
  - "MEDIA",
  - "TRIP COMPUTER",
  - "DATE AND TIME",
  - "LANGUAGES",
  - "VEHICLE PARAM",
- ☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio / Media

With the audio system switched on, once the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, Radio text) or select the media play mode (normal, random, repeat).

For more information on the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" application, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.



Trip computer

Once the "TRIP COMPUTER" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Date and time

Once the "DATE AND TIME" menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hours,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.

☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "LANGUAGES" menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display, from a predefined list.

Vehicle parameters

Once the "VEHICLE PARAM" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- "PARK BRAKE" (Automatic electric parking brake; refer to the "Driving" section).
- "BEND LIGHTING" (Directional lighting; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "AUTO HEADLAMPS" (Automatic illumination of headlamps; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "REAR WIPE ACT" (Rear wiper coupled with reverse gear; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "GUIDE LAMPS" (Guide-me-home lighting; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "ELECTRIC BOOT" (Selective unlocking of the boot; refer to the "Access" section),
- "CABIN SELECT" (Selective unlocking; refer to the "Access" section),
- "DAY LAMPS" (Daytime running lamps; refer to the "Visibility" section).

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN C



Displays in the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- parking space measurement,
- current audio source,
- telephone or Bluetooth system information,
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:

- button **A** to chooses between the display of audio information in full screen or the shared display of audio and trip computer information,
- the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or

- the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Bluetooth connection",
  - "Personalisation-configuration",
- Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).

For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.



"Telephone" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

"Trip computer" menu

This menu allows you to view information on the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

This summarises the status and warning messages for systems (active, not active or faulty), displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the main menu.

☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the "**Trip computer**" menu.

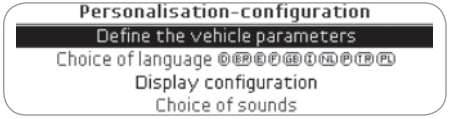
☞ In the "**Trip computer**" menu, select the "Warning log" line and confirm.

"Bluetooth connection" menu

Wit the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be connected or disconnected and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).

For more information on the "Bluetooth connection" application, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration",
- "Choice of sounds".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate the following equipment, classified in different categories:

- "Access to the vehicle" (see the "Access" section):
  - "Plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
  - "Unlocking boot only" (Selective unlocking of the boot).



- "Driving assistance":
  - "Parking brake automatic" (Automatic electric parking brake; see the "Driving" section),
  - "Rear wipe in reverse gear" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see the "Visibility" section),
  - "Speeds memorised" (Memorising speeds; see the "Driving" section).
- "Vehicle lighting" (see the "Visibility" section):
  - "Directional headlamps" (Main / additional directional lighting),
  - "Daytime lights" (Daytime running lamps).
- "Interior lighting" (see the "Visibility" section:
  - "Follow-me-home headlamps" (Automatic operation of headlamps after switching off the ignition),
  - "Welcome lighting" (Exterior and interior welcome lighting).

For example: setting of the duration of the "follow-me-home" lighting

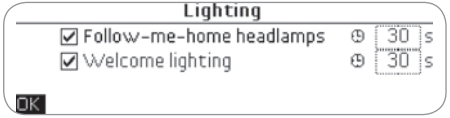
☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons, to select the "Define the vehicle parameters" menu, then the "**OK**" button.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Interior lighting" line, then the **"OK"** button; then follow the same procedure to select the "Follow-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display from a pre-defined list.

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".

Adjusting the date and time

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing **"OK"**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Choice of sounds

This menu allows you to choose a family of polyphonic sounds from the four available. These sounds are grouped together in a family and are adapted to suit the situation and context (alert, confirmation, rejection, direction indicators, lighting left on, key in ignition...).

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

COLOUR SCREEN



Displays in the screen

Depending on the context, it displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- parking space measurement,
- audio functions,
- directory and telephone information,
- satellite navigation system information,
- trip computer,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen, the satellite navigation system and vehicle systems.

Controls



From the navigation system control panel, to select one of the applications:

☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"PHONE"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,

☞ turn the dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,

☞ press button **B** to confirm the selection,

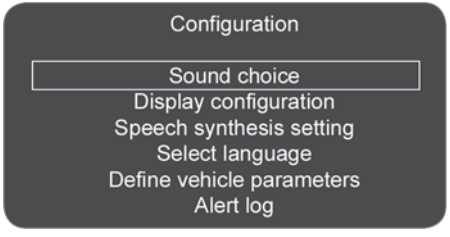
or

☞ press the **"Back"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

With repeated presses on the **C "MODE"** button, the screen displays:

- "RADIO / MEDIA"*,
- "TELEPHONE"*,
- "FULL SCREEN MAP"*,
- "MAP IN A WINDOW"*,
- "TRIP COMPUTER".

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to open the configuration menu:

- "Sound choice",
- "Display configuration",
- "Speech synthesis setting".
- "Select language",
- "Define vehicle parameters",
- "Alert log".

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Choice of sounds

This menu allows you to choose a family of polyphonic sounds from four available. These sounds are grouped together in a family and are adapted to suit the situation and context (alert, confirmation, rejection, direction indicators, lighting left on, key in ignition...).

Display configuration

This menu is used to select the colour scheme for the screen, adjust the brightness, set the date and time and to choose the units for distance (km or miles), fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l) and temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit).

Adjusting the date and time

- Press on **SETUP**.
- Select "Display configuration" and confirm.
- Select "Set date and time and confirm.

Select "Minute adjustment via GPS" so that the minutes are adjusted automatically by satellite reception.

- Select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing on **OK**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.
- Adjust the settings one by one.
- Select "**OK**" in the screen then confirm to save the setting.

Adjusting the voice synthesiser

This menu is used to adjust the volume setting for navigation instructions and to choose the type of voice (male or female).

Choice of language

This menu is used to choose the language used by the screen from a defined list.

Vehicle parameters

This menu is used to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort systems, classified by category:

- "Driver aid":
  - "Electric brake*" (Automatic electric parking brake; see "Driving" section),
  - "Rear wiper" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see "Visibility" section),
  - "Speed limits" (Memorising speed settings for the cruise control and speed limiter; see "Driving" section).
- "Vehicle access" (see "Access" section):
  - "Driver doors selectivity" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
  - "Rear doors selectivity" (Selective unlocking of the boot using the centre button on the remote control; see "Access section).
- "Driving lights" (see "Visibility" section):
  - "Day lights*" (Daytime running lamps),
  - "Directional headlights" (Main / additional directional lighting).
- "Comfort lighting" (see "Visibility" section):
  - "Welcome lights" (Interior welcome lighting),
  - "Running lights" (Automatic timed operation of headlamps).

Alert log

This lists the active alerts by displaying in turn the different messages associated with them.

* Depending on country.

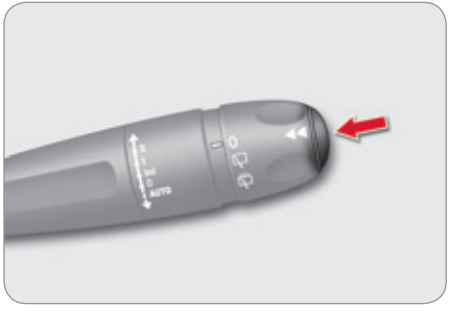
TRIP COMPUTER

System that gives you information on the journey in progress (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen A



Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer information in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- Stop & Start time counter,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,



- average speed.



☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

Zero reset



☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

2

Monochrome screen C





Information displays

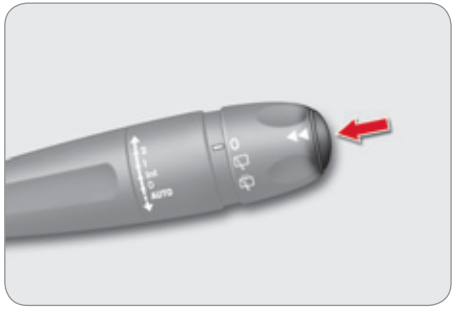


You can choose between two types of display by pressing button **A**:

- the trip computer information appears temporarily above the audio information, displayed permanently in full screen,

  or

- the trip computer and audio information both appear permanently in a shared screen.



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

- the current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter,

1

- the trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

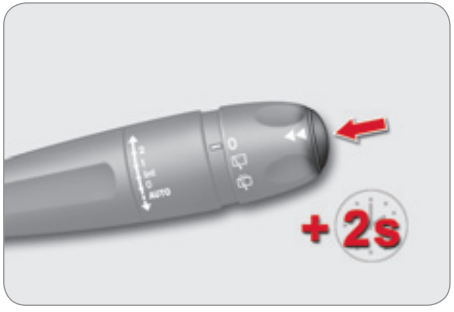
  for the first trip.

2

- the trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the second trip.

Trip zero reset



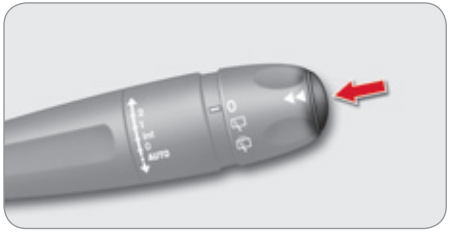
☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Colour screen

Display modes





☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper stalk** to display the trip computer information temporarily in a new window.



☞ Press the button on the eMyWay front panel, to display continuously the trip computer information.



Information display

☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the following information in turn:

- current information,
- trip **"1"**,
- trip **"2"**,

- Current information is displayed in the screen, depending on the context:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - Stop & Start time counter,

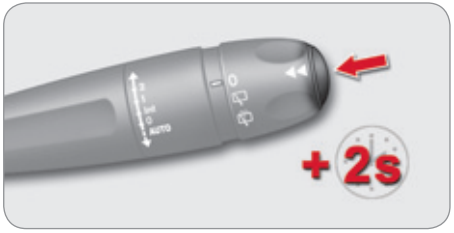
    or
  - the remaining distance to go.

- The trip **"1"** screen displays:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the first trip.
- The trip **"2"** screen displays:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the second trip.

Trip zero reset



☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper stalk** for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

A few definitions...



Range

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.

The fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher than the official figures obtained by CITROËN during the first 3 000 miles (5 000 km) of the vehicle's life.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).



Distance travelled

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.



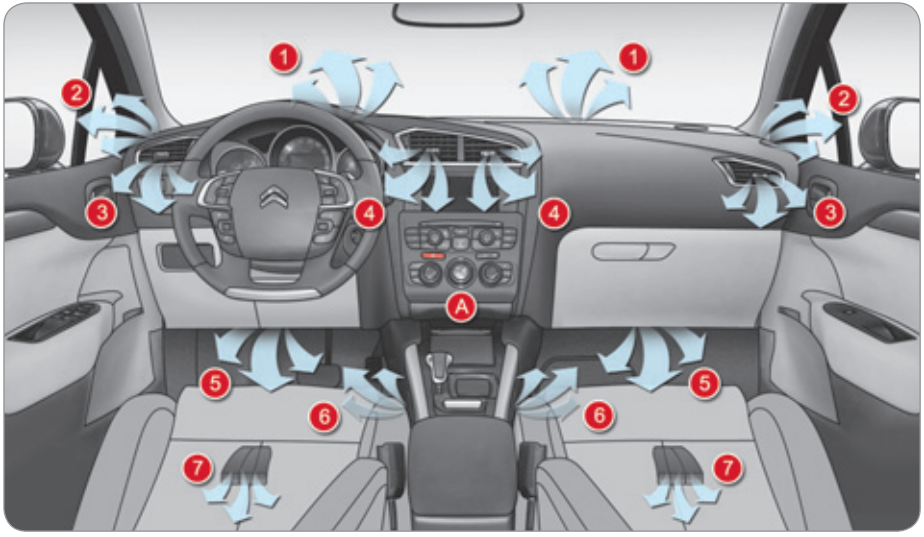
Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

VENTILATION



Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air nozzles to the front footwells.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system (see the corresponding section).

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial to select a position between blue (cold) and red (hot) so as to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



This dial is used to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0**, the system is deactivated. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

Avoid driving too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

3. Air distribution adjustment

This dial is used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

This function allows hot or cold air to be delivered selectively and more quickly.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **"0"**.

To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

DUAL-ZONE DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning system operates when the engine is running.

When the engine is cold, the air flow will reach its optimum level progressively, taking account of the weather and the desired comfort level so as to avoid too great a distribution of cold air.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

Automatic operation

1. Automatic comfort programme



We recommend the use of one of the three AUTO modes available: they provide optimised regulation of the temperature in the passenger compartment according to the comfort value that you have chosen.

These three modes automatically adjust the air flow, according to the desired setting, while also maintaining the desired comfort value.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button repeatedly:

- a first indicator lamp comes on; the "light" setting mode is selected,
- a second indicator lamp comes on; the "medium" setting mode is selected,
- a third indicator lamp comes on; the "intense" mode setting is selected.

2. Driver's side adjustment

3. Passenger's side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

4. Automatic visibility programme



See "Front demisting - defrosting".

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The the **"AUTO"** indicator lamps go off; the other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp on the **"A/C"** button comes on.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the outer and centre air vents,
- the footwells.

You can combine the three orientations to obtain the desired air distribution.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

8. Air intake / Air recirculation



☞ Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

9. "REST" function: ventilation with the engine off



Even with the engine is off, you can operate the ventilation for a few minutes.

For example, while you are away from the vehicle, the passengers can still enjoy some air circulation without having the engine running.

This function is available after switching on the ignition, as well as after stopping the engine.

The period that the function is available depends on the state of charge of the battery.

You can activate the "REST" function while the air conditioning control screens are on.

On switching on the engine

- The control screens come on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.
- The function can be deactivated and reactivated if the control screens are on.
- The screens go off at the end of this period.

On stopping the engine

- While the control screens remain on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.

  Locking the vehicle has no effect on this function.
- The control screens go off at the end of this period.

  Pressing again before the end of the period interrupts off the ventilation definitively: the control screens go off and the function is no longer available.

This switch does not operate the air conditioning, only the air fan.

When the "REST" function is activated, you cannot modify the temperature, air flow and distribution settings: these are controlled automatically according to the ambient temperature.

This function is not available in the STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Switching the system off



☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.

Temperature related comfort is no longer assured but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Modify the settings (temperature, air flow or air distribution) or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

FRONT DEMIST - DEFROST



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp on the control off).
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

With digital dual-zone air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme

- ☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To stop the programme, press either the **"visibility"** button again or **"AUTO"**, the warning lamp on the button goes off and the warning lamp on the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use before it was overridden by the visibility programme.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

REAR SCREEN DEMIST - DEFROST



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

- ☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

3

FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be done when stationary.

Manual adjustments

Forwards-backwards

☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Driver's or passenger's seat height

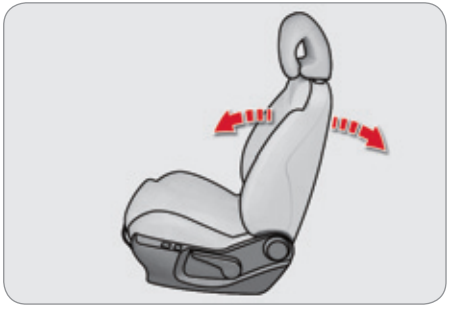
☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.

Seat backrest angle

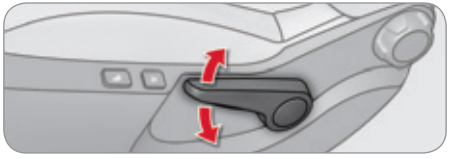
☞ Turn the control knob to adjust the seat backrest angle.













FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat backrest and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Driver's seat electric adjustments

Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Seat backrest angle

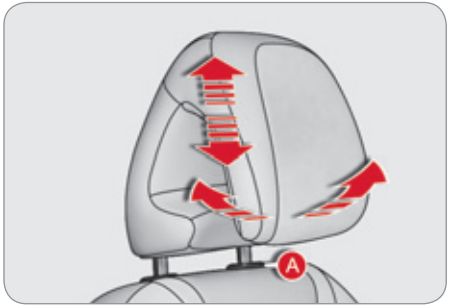
☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.







Additional adjustments



Head restraint height and angle

- To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back and press the lug **A** at the same time.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

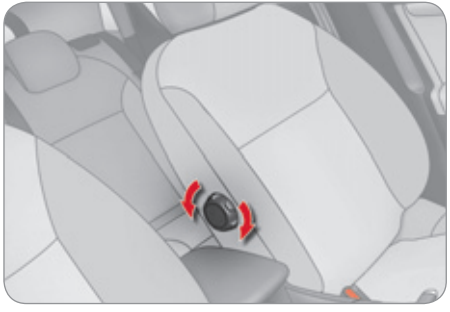
Heated seats control



With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:
  - **0:** Off.
  - **1:** Low.
  - **2:** Medium.
  - **3:** High.

Manual lumbar adjustment



☞ Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Electric lumbar adjustment



☞ Press the front or rear of the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function



This function provides a back massage; it only operates when the engine is running.

☞ Press the switch to activate the function.

The warning lamp on the switch comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 60 minutes. During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes each cycle (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break).

After an hour, the function is automatically deactivated. The warning lamp in the switch goes off.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing the switch. The movement in progress continues until the initial non-massage position is reached.

Storing driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

  An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

  An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

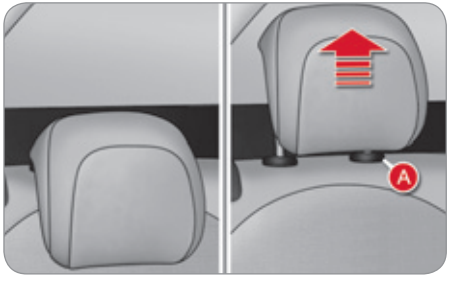
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

REAR SEATS

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (left hand 2/3, right hand 1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

Rear head restraints

These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).



They can also be removed.

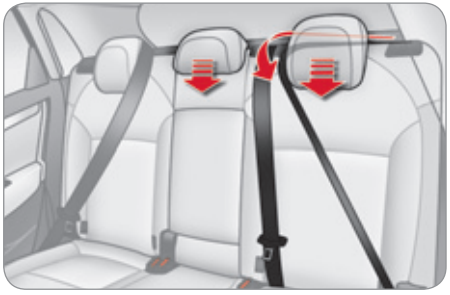
To remove a head restraint:

- release the backrest using control **1**,
- tilt the backrest **2** slightly forwards,
- pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,
- then, press the lug **A**.

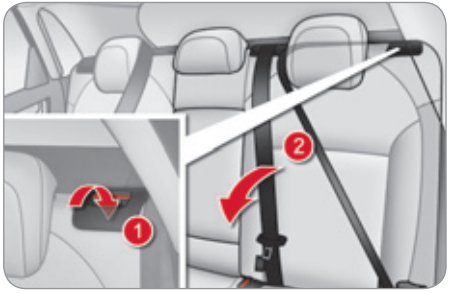
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Folding the backrest

- Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- Position the seat belt between the outer and centre head restraints to avoid trapping the belt when repositioning the seat backrest.
- Place the head restraints in the low position.



- Pull control **1** forwards to release the seat back **2**.
- Fold the seat back **2** on to the cushion.



Repositioning the seat backrest

- Straighten the seat back **2** and secure it.
- Check that the red indicator, located next to the control **1**, is no longer visible.
- Put the seat belt back in place on the side of the seat backrest.

When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.



MIRRORS



Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen (refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" page).

Adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Never fold or unfold the electric folding mirrors manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.



Programming

☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.

☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.

☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position

- Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

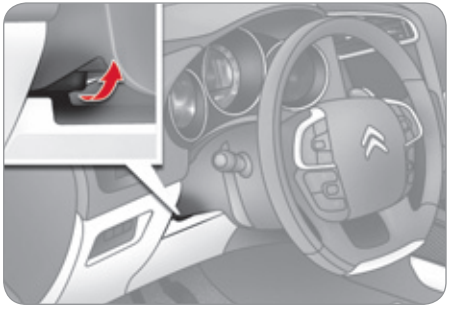
Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Opening the vehicle using the 2-button remote control



Unfolding the key

☞ Press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle completely.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key towards the front in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle completely.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.

The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

Programming unlocking



Setting the total or selective unlocking is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

4

Unlocking the vehicle using the 3-button remote control



Unfolding the key

☞ Press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle completely.

Selective unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Programming unlocking

The complete or selective door unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Opening the windows using the remote control

☞ Maintain the press on the open padlock until the desired opening is obtained. The windows stop as soon as you release the button.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle completely.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.

The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

Selective unlocking of the boot

☞ Press the middle button on the remote control to unlock the boot. The doors remain locked.

Selective unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this button also unlocks the doors.

Remember to lock your boot again by pressing the closed padlock.

Programming the unlocking

Setting the selective unlocking of the boot is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

Selective unlocking of the boot is activated by default.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

However, the alarm (if present) will be completely activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds.

If the alarm had previously been activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Closing the windows using the 3-button remote control



☞ Press and hold down the closed padlock until the level of closing is achieved. The windows stop when you release the button.

When closing the windows using the remote control you must ensure that nothing prevents their correct closing.

If you want to leave the windows partly open, it is necessary to deactivate the volumetric alarm protection.



Folding the key

☞ First press this button to fold the key.

If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.



Starting the vehicle

- Insert the key in the ignition switch.
  The system recognises the starting code.
- Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- When the engine starts, release the key.

Switching the vehicle off

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Key left in the "Ignition on" position

On opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Operating fault with the 2-button remote control

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of malfunction of the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

- Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- Clip the casing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Operating fault with the 3-button remote control

In the event of a malfunction with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

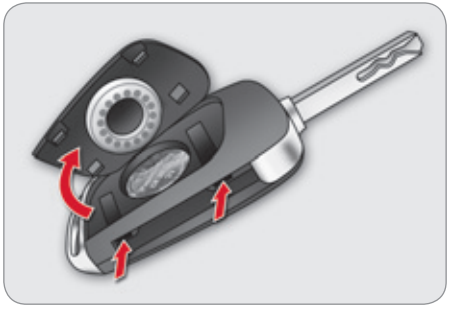
- First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

- Switch off the ignition and remove the ignition key.
- Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR2032/3 volts.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

- Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the two cutouts.
- Lift off the cover.
- Remove the flat battery from its location.
- Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- Clip the cover onto the casing.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Lost keys

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.

In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

CENTRAL LOCKING CONTROL

This control allows the simultaneous locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from inside the vehicle.



Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

If one of the doors is open, central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press the button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

If the vehicle is locked from the outside, this button is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle or pull an interior door handle to open a door.

ANTI-INTRUSION SECURITY

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Carrying long and voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this locking is temporary.

Activation / Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

the state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



☞ Open the doors.

☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see the corresponding section).

☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.

☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

ALARM*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring.

- exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

* According to country.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.



Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

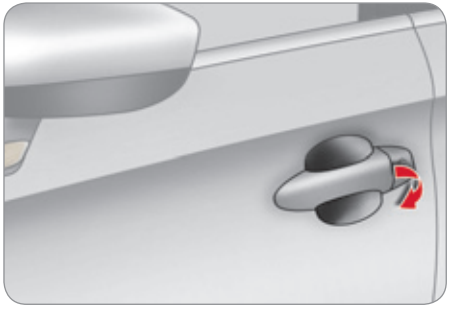
When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

DOORS

Opening

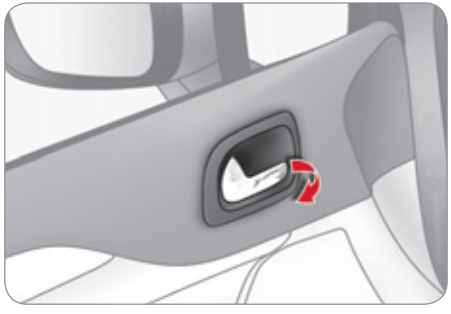
From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

With the selective unlocking activated:

- opening the the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
- opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.

BOOT

Opening

☞ After unlocking the boot or the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the opening control, then raise the tailgate.



Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

☞ If necessary, press down on the tailgate to fully close it.

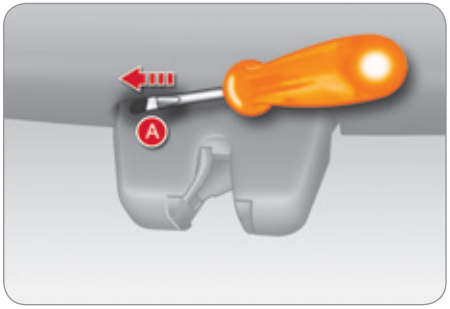
If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

Tailgate release

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.



Unlocking

☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.

☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.

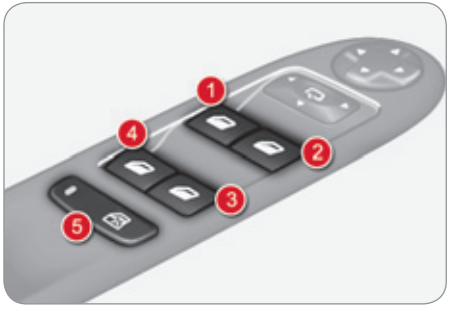
☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a deactivation system for the rear controls.



1. **Driver's electric window.**
2. **Passenger's electric window.**
3. **Rear right electric window.**
4. **Rear left electric window.**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric window controls.**

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.
- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated which only authorises closing of the window to prevent damage to the electric window motor.

Once the window is closed, the controls will become available again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), once the window has lowered:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

After reconnecting the battery or a fault, you must be reinitialise the operation of the electric windows. For each of the control switches on the driver's side control panel:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that nothing is preventing the windows closing correctly.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF

Your vehicle is fitted with a tinted glass panoramic sunroof which increases the light and visibility in the passenger compartment. Its electric blind helps control the temperature in the passenger compartment.

Electric blind



The blind is controlled electrically by a rotary dial.

Opening

Turn the dial to the left (four possible settings).

Closing

Return the dial to the initial position.



If the position of the blind does not agree with the position indicated by the dial, press the dial to open the blind to this position.

Safety anti-pinch

If the blind encounters an obstacle during closing, it stops and partially opens again.

If the blind fails to close at a second attempt, it may be necessary to force the closing of the blind using the reinitialisation procedure.

Reinitialising the system

Following reconnection of the battery, or in the event of a malfunction in its operation, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ turn the dial to the fully closed position,
- ☞ then immediately press the dial, closing starts after about 10 seconds,
- ☞ maintain pressure on the dial until the blind has fully closed.

The anti-pinch function is inoperative during these operations.

In the event of contact during operation of the blind, you must reverse its movement. To do this, turn the dial.

When the driver operates the dial, they must ensure that nothing prevents the blind from closing correctly.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the blind correctly.

Be aware of children during operation of the blind.

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and the display of an alert message. When it first comes on, **around 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, every time the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp appears, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and the display of this alert message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the level drops towards **0**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to "Checks".

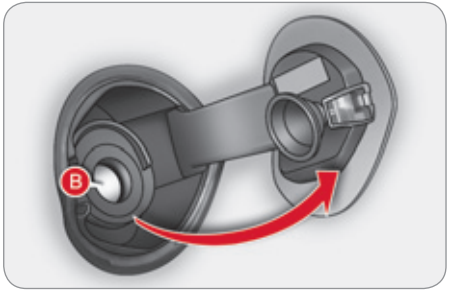
With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

- Press control **A** until the automatic opening of the fuel flap is heard.

  This control remains active for a few minutes after switching off the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.



- Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel for your vehicle.
- Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap **B**.
- Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- Maintain this position while refuelling.
- Push the fuel flap to close it.



Refuelling

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the third cut-off; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.

The petrol or Diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, the use of unleaded fuel is compulsory.

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 or E24 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % or 24 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

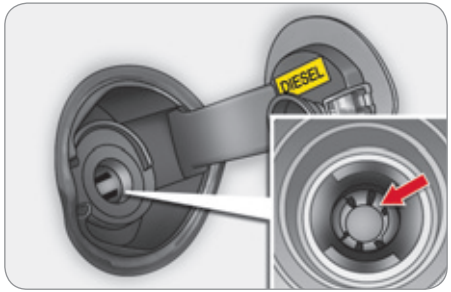
The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

MISFUEL PREVENTION (DIESEL)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

4

* According to country of sale.

LIGHTING CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps,
- front foglamps with cornering lighting,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting to facilitate access to the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle position markers.

Programming

The setting of some functions can be adjusted:

- daytime running lamps,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- directional lighting.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

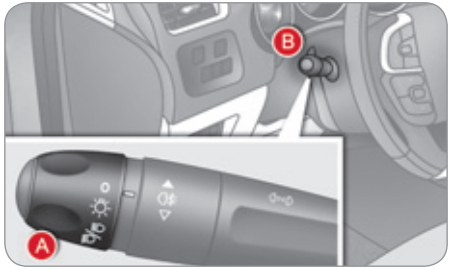
- in countries where it is imposed by regulations,

  by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps; this function cannot be deactivated.
- for other countries where it is provided,

  by the use of dedicated lamps; this function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, multifunction screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting



Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0	Lighting off / daytime running lamps.
AUTO	Automatic illumination of headlamps.
	Sidelamps.
	Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Model with rear foglamps only



Model with front and rear foglamps



C. Foglamp selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

 rear foglamps

They operates with the dipped beam headlamps and main beam headlamps.

- ☞ To switch on the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- ☞ To switch off the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

When automatic illumination of headlamps is on (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on while the rear foglamps are on.

 front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:

- ☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.

If the lighting is switched on manually after switching off the ignition, there is an audible signal when a front door is opened to warn the driver that they have forgotten to switch off the vehicle's lighting, with the ignition off.

They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.

☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



☞ Within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

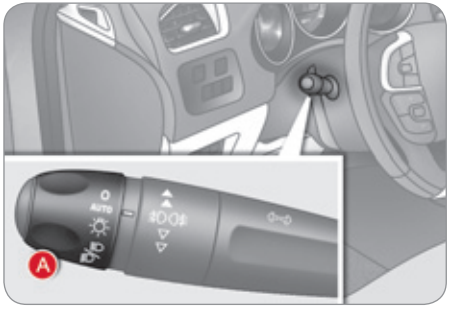
This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn ring **A** to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Coupling with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic illumination of headlamps provides "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration to 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the settings in the vehicle configuration menu (except in the case of the monochrome screen A, for which the duration is set: 60 seconds),
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting come on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop workshop.

In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the passenger compartment lighting makes your access to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated depending on the light level detected by the sunshine sensor.



Switching on



☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control; your vehicle is unlocked.

On the outside, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps, as well as the side spotlamps, located under the door mirrors, come on.



On the inside, the footwell and courtesy lamps come on.

Switching off

On the outside, the welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

On the inside, the welcome lighting switches off automatically after a predetermined time or on opening one of the doors.

Programming



Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the lighting duration for the exterior welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF XENON HEADLAMPS



This system adjusts the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle, so as to avoid causing a nuisance to other road user.

SERVICE If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon bulbs.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

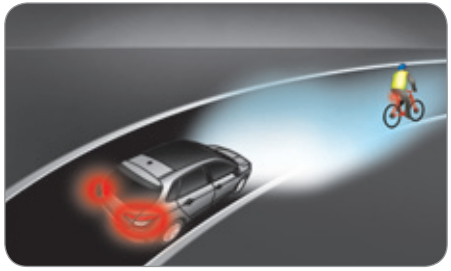
DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, allows the light beams to better follow the road.

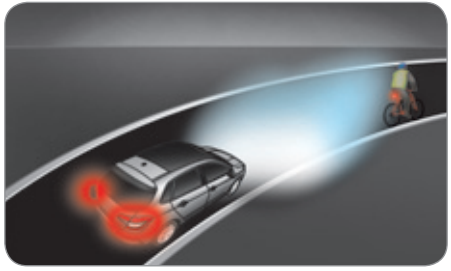
The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps and the cornering lighting, considerably improves the quality of your lighting round bends.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting



This function is inactive:

- when stationary or at low speeds,
- when reverse is engaged.

Programming



The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.

The state of the system stays in memory on switching off the ignition.

Operating fault



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

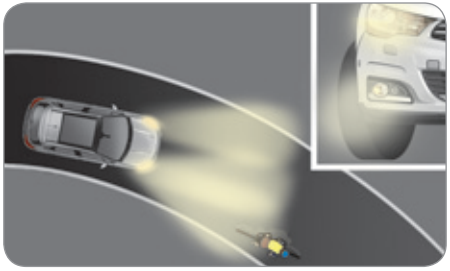
CORNERING LIGHTING

With dipped or main beams, this function makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manouevres...).

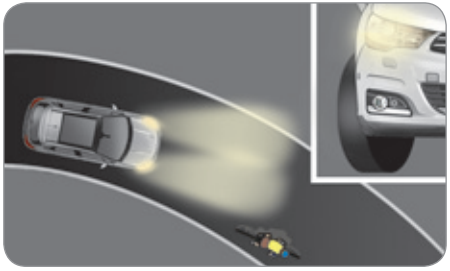


5

with cornering lighting



without cornering lighting



Switching on

This function starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

  or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming



The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning the screens.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility according to the climatic conditions.

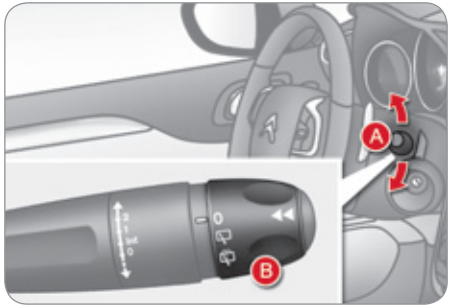
The wipers are controlled by means of stalk **A** for the front and the ring **B** for the rear.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available depending on whether the following options are fitted:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Model without AUTO wiping



Model with AUTO wiping



Windscreen wiper

A. Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain).
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain).
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
0	Park.
↓	Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).
	or
AUTO ↓	Automatic wiping (press down, then release). Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

5

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Switching on



Briefly push stalk **A** downwards.

The instruction is confirmed by a wiping cycle, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and an activation message.

Switching off



Briefly push stalk **A** downwards again.

The instruction is confirmed by this warning lamp going off in the instrument panel and/or the display of a deactivation message.

The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be re-activated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If an automatic rain sensitive wiper malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped or main beam headlamps are on**, **with the vehicle moving**.

To reduce the consumption of the fluid by the headlamp washers, they operate only with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

Low screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

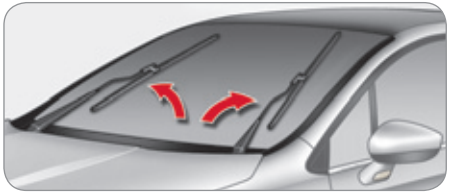
On vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, the low level of this fluid is indicated by gauge in the reservoir filler neck under the bonnet.

Checking and topping up this fluid can should be done with the engine off.

The level of this fluid should be checked regularly, particularly during winter.

Refer to "Checks - Screenwash / headlamp wash level" section for the procedure on checking the level.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

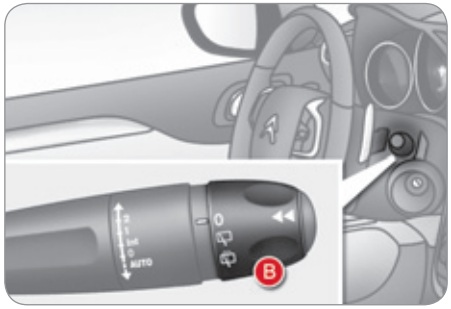
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" type of wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Rear wiper



If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

B. Rear wiper selection ring: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

Turn the ring to its stop/the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper operates for a set duration.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

COURTESY LAMPS





1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Front map reading lamps**
3. **Rear courtesy lamp**
4. **Rear map reading lamps**

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is used to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on

At night, two interior mood lamps in the front courtesy lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.



Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

It can be switched off manually by adjusting the instrument panel lighting rheostat button to one of the lowest settings.



BOOT LAMP

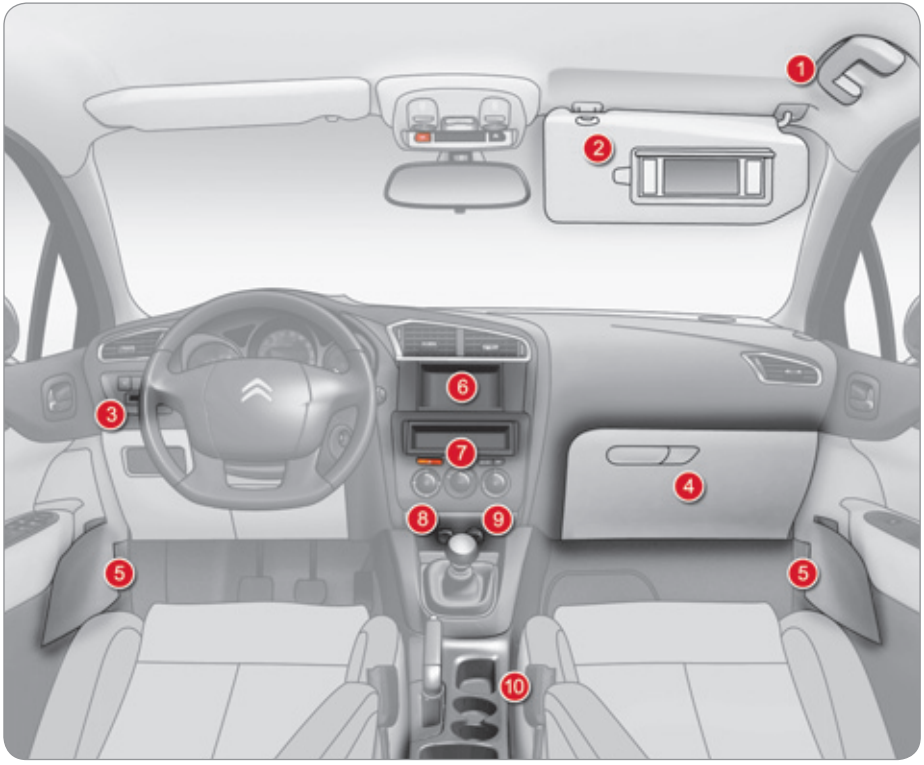


This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

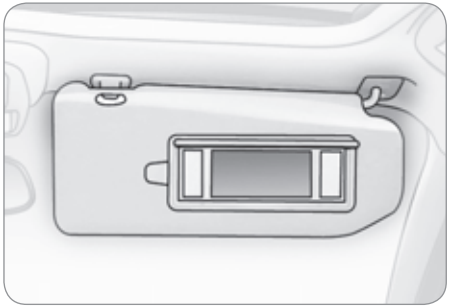
5



INTERIOR FITTINGS

1. **Grab handle**
2. **Sun visor**
   (see details on a following page)
3. **Ticket/map holder**
4. **Illuminated glove box**
   (see details on a following page)
5. **Door pockets**
6. **Large open storage box (without audio system)**
   or
   Small storage box with flap (with audio system)
7. **Small open storage box (without audio system)**
8. **USB port / Auxiliary socket**
   (see details on a following page)
9. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on following pages)
10. **Centre armrest with storage**
    (see details on a following page)

SUN VISOR



Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX



It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...

Its lid has locations for storing a pen, a pair of glasses, tokens, maps, a cup...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

It is lit when the lid is opened.

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch **A**.

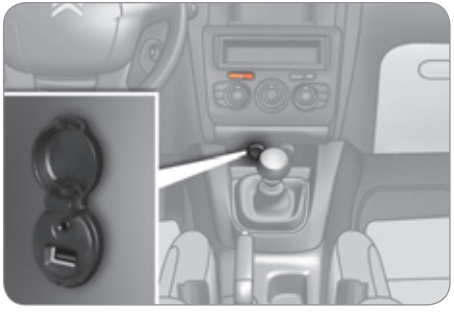
If the vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, it provides access to the ventilation nozzle **B**, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

12 V ACCESSORY SOCKET



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

USB PORT / AUXILIARY SOCKET



The **"AUX"** connection box, located in the centre console, comprises an auxiliary JACK socket and/or a USB port.

It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® or USB memory stick type.

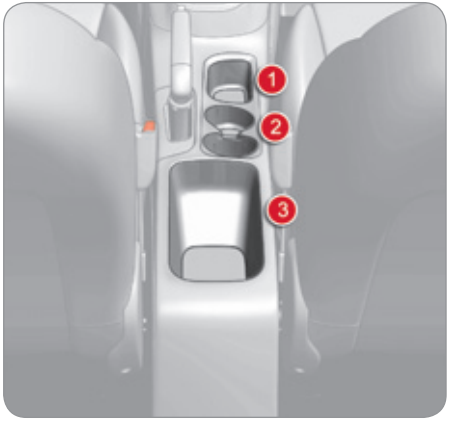
It reads certain audio file formats allowing them to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

Connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically while in use.

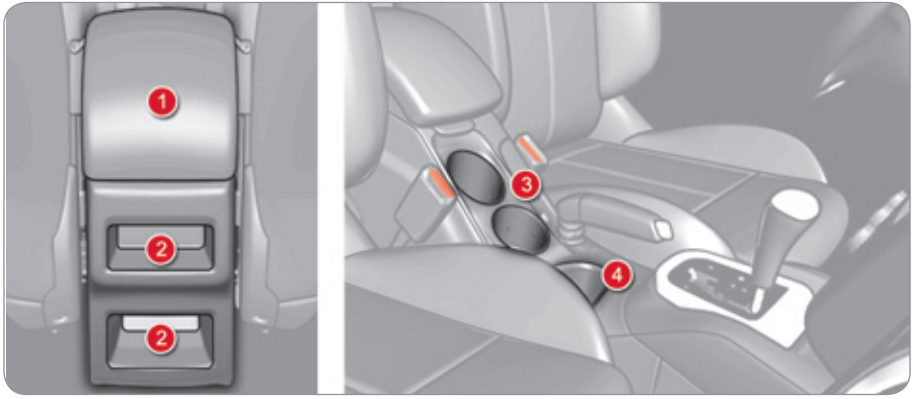
For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

LOWER CENTRE CONSOLE



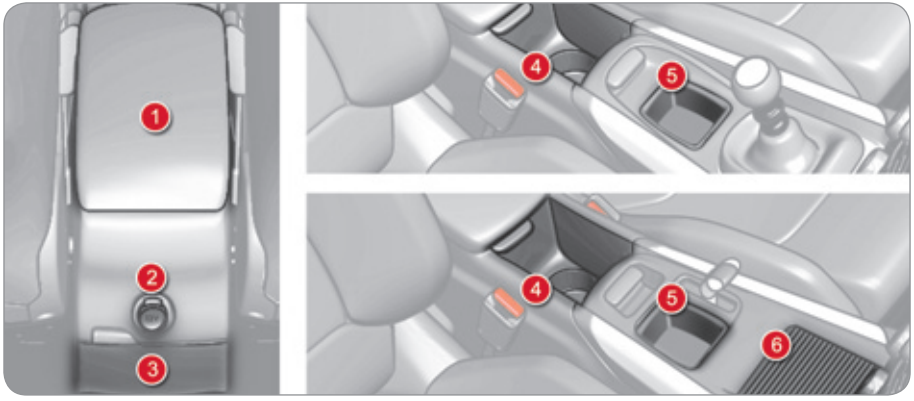
1. **Storage pocket**
2. **Cup holder**
3. **Large open storage box**

SEMI-RAISED CENTRE CONSOLE



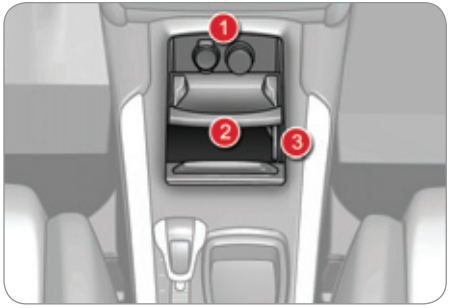
1. **Front armrest**
   (see details on following pages)
2. **Open storage**
3. **Cup holder**
4. **Storage pocket**

RAISED CENTRE CONSOLE



1. **Front armrest**
   (see details on following pages)
2. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on following pages)
3. **Storage box**
4. **Cup holder/Bottle holder**
5. **Storage pocket**
6. **Large multifunctional storage unit**
   (see details on following pages)

LARGE MULTIFUNCTIONAL STORAGE UNIT



This storage unit is closed by a sliding shutter.

It contains:

- the USB port and 12 V/auxiliary sockets **1**,
- a retractable support **2** to receive your mobile phone or portable device,
- a space ventilated by a closeable nozzle **3**, to keep food and drinks fresh if the air conditioning is operating.

It is illuminated only when the sliding shutter is fully open.

The sliding shutter can be partly closed up to the level of the retractable support, so as to keep the storage unit cool.

FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.

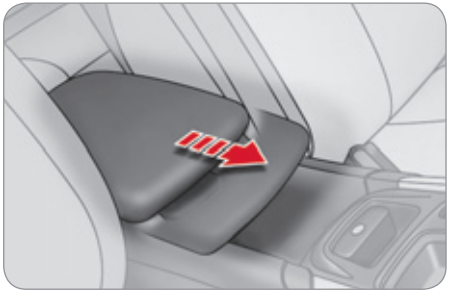
The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.



Height adjustment

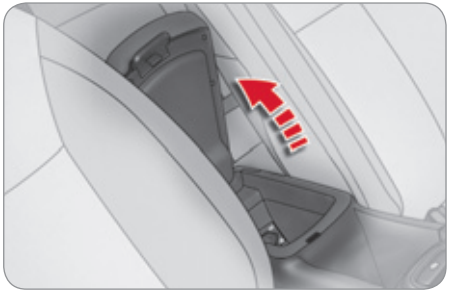
☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).

☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.



Longitudinal adjustment

☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.



Storage

The storage space in the armrest can hold up to 6 CDs.

This storage space may be fitted with a 230 V/50 Hz socket.

☞ Raise the lever.

☞ Raise the cover fully.

FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

The length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.



Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ To move forwards, raise the lever. The armrest slides forwards to its stop.
- ☞ To stow it, slide it fully back and press down to lock it.



Storage

The armrest's compartment can hold up to 6 CDs.

- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

230 V/50 HZ POWER SOCKET



A 230 V/50 Hz socket (maximum power: 120 W) is fitted to the centre console.

To use the socket:

- ☞ lift the front armrest cover for access to its compartment,
- ☞ check that the warning lamp is on green,
- ☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer...).

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode on Stop & Start.

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).

Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).

As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload...), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green warning lamp goes off.

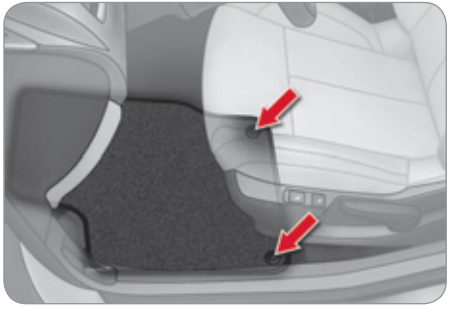
12 V ACCESSORY SOCKET



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

MATS

Removable carpet protection.



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

STORAGE DRAWERS

Located under each front seat, except for the driver's seat on versions with electric seat.



Opening

- ☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it open.

Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

Removal

Avoid removing the drawer completely, as refitting it is not easy.

- ☞ Open the drawer fully.
- ☞ Pull the drawer upwards to disengage it.

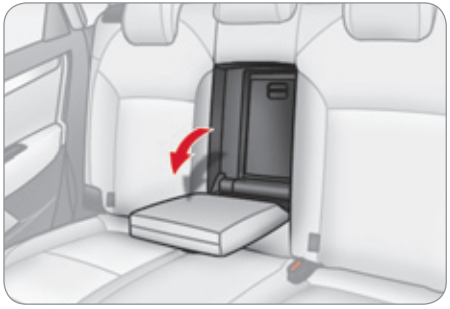
Refitting

However, if it has been completely removed, to refit it:

- ☞ use the torch to illuminate the area under the seat,
- ☞ engage the drawer in its runners,
- ☞ lift the retaining tongues and slide the drawer under these tongues,
- ☞ at the end of its travel, press down on the drawer to engage it.

REAR ARMREST

Comfort system for the rear passengers.



☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

This also gives access to the ski flap.

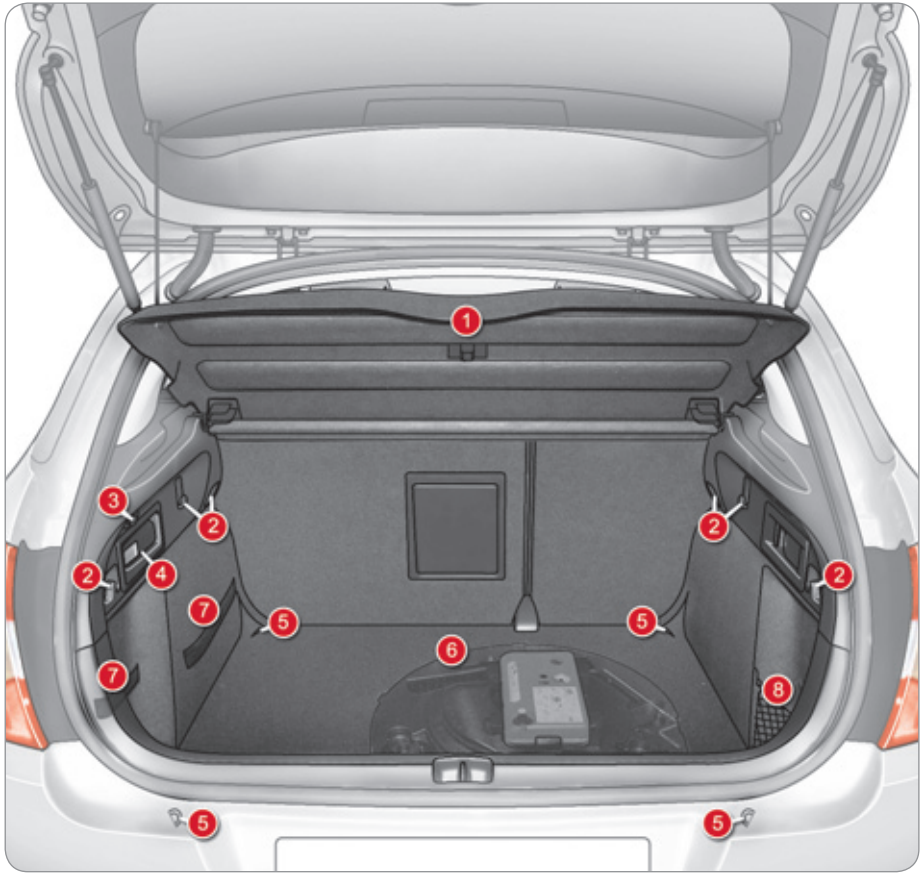
SKI FLAP

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.



Opening

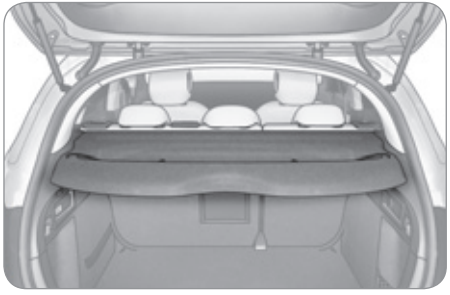
☞ Lower the rear armrest.
☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on a following page)
2. **Hooks**
   (see details on a following page)
3. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on a following page)
4. **Torch**
   (see details on following pages)
5. **Lashing rings**
6. **Storage box**
   (see details on following pages)
7. **Retaining straps**
8. **Storage net**

Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

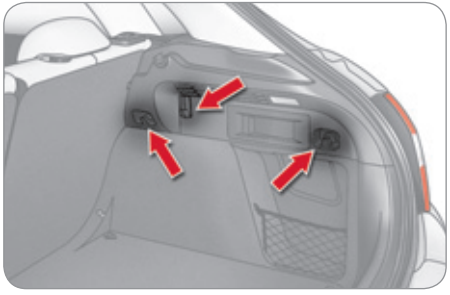
☞ unhook the two cords,

☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

Hooks



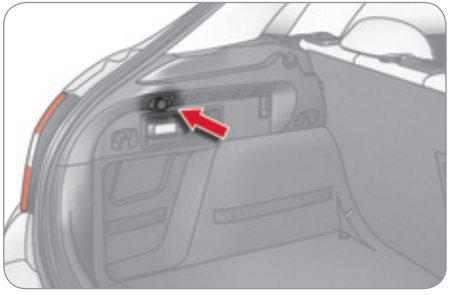
The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.

Access to the storage box



An additional hook under the shelf is used to hold up the boot floor using its cord, to facilitate access to the tools and spare wheel or the temporary puncture repair kit...

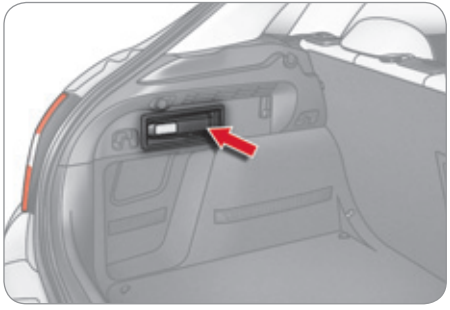
12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.

☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Torch



This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.

For the boot lamp function, refer to the "Visibility - § Boot lamp" section.

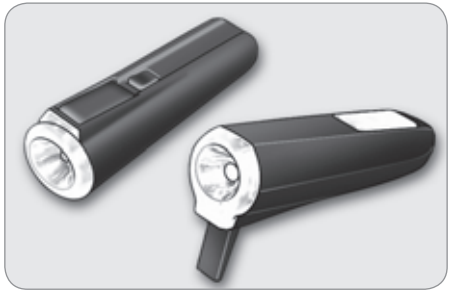
Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.

Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal disposable batteries.



Use

- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.

  If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

It the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Storage box

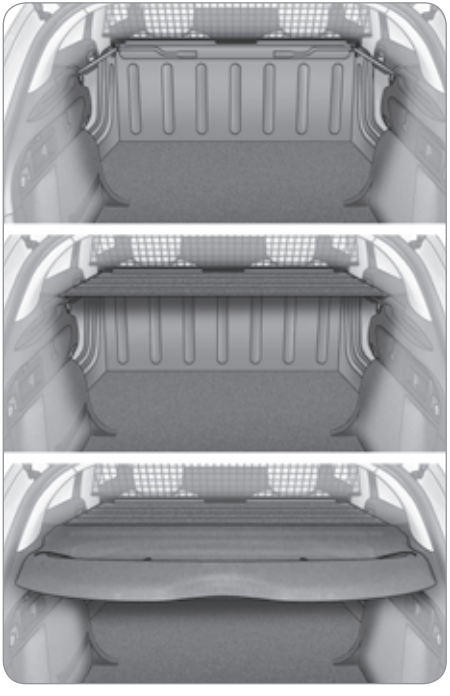


- ☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

This has areas for the storage of a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, two warning triangles...

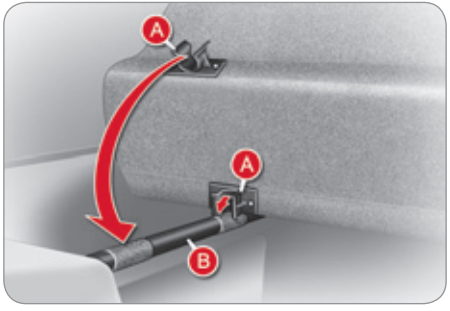
It also contains the vehicle tools, the temporary puncture repair kit...

LUGGAGE COVER (ENTERPRISE VERSION)



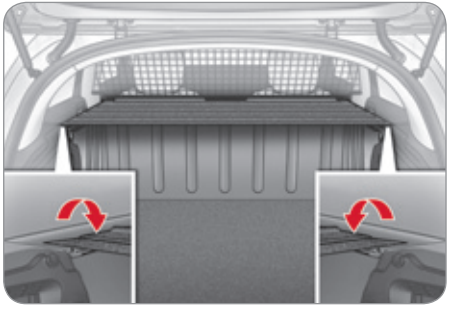
This conceals the interior of the vehicle in combination with your rear parcel shelf.

Installation



☞ Insert the fixings **A** on the frame **B** while unrolling the luggage cover.

Stowage



☞ Roll up the luggage cover near the rear seats.

Removal

☞ Unhook all of the fixings.
☞ Lift the luggage cover on each side.

Do not place hard or heavy objects on the luggage cover.
They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of CITROËN main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

CITROËN recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearward-facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward-facing"** over the age of 3.

* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT*

"Rearward-facing"



When a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened.

The passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

"Forward-facing"



When a "forward-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's airbag activated.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

DEACTIVATING THE PASSENGER'S AIRBAG

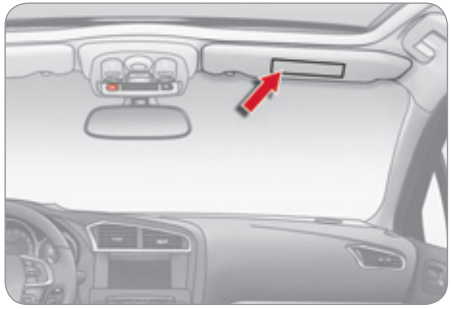
Never install a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

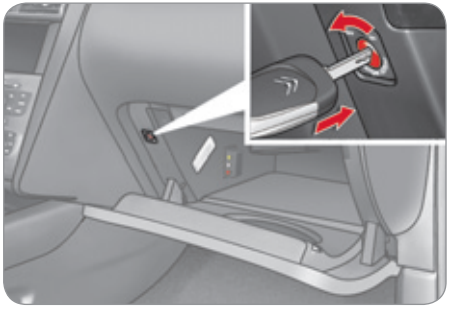


Passenger airbag OFF

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following two pages contain this warning in all of the languages required.







For information on deactivating the airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това можеда причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug aldrig en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde der er beskyttet af en aktiv airbag. Død eller alvorlig skade på barnet kan forekomme.
DE	Verwenden Sie NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder Babyschale gegen die Fahrtrichtung bei AKTIVIERTEM Airbag, TOD oder ERNSTHAFTE VERLETZUNGEN können die Folge sein.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA EL SISTEMA DE RETENCIÓN PARA NIÑOS DE ESPALDAS AL SENTIDO DE LA CIRCULACIÓN SOBRE UN ASIENTO PROTEGIDO CON UN COJÍN INFLABLE FRONTAL (AIRBAG) ACTIVADO. ESTO PUEDE CAUSAR LA MUERTE DEL BEBE O HERIRLO GRAVEMENTE.
ET	Ärge kasutage kunagi lapse turvatooli seljaga sõidusuunas sõiduki istmel mis on kaitstud AKTIVEERITUD TURVAPADJAGA. See võib põhjustada lapsele RASKEID VIGASTUSI või SURMA.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést olyan ülésen, amely AKTIVÁLT ÁLLAPOTÚ (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL van védve. Ez a gyermek halálát vagy súlyos sérülését okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NAV PIEĻAUJAMS uzstādīt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera vietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.

MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND ERNSTIG OF DODELIJK GEWOND raken.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji «tyłem do kierunku jazdy»na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM.W przeciwnym razie dziecko narażone będzie na ŚMIERĆ lub BARDZO POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA w momenicie wyzwolenia poduszki powietrznej
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada, num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY nepoužívajte na prednom sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM detské zadržiavacie zariadenie umiestnené v proti smere jazdy. Môže to spôsobiť SMRŤ, alebo VÁŽNE ZRANENIE DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol i ett säte skyddat av en AKTIV AIRBAG framför det. Det kan orsaka ALLVARLIGA eller DÖDLIGA skador på barnet.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

CHILD SEAT AT THE REAR

"Rearward facing"

When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"

When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tightened. For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor.

CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN

CITROËN offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearwards-facing position.		**L2** "KIDDY Comfort Pro" The impact shield must be used for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	**L4** "KLIPPAN Optima" From approxmately 6 years (from 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.		**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

LOCATIONS FOR CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	**Weight of the child** / indicative age			
	Less than 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
Front passenger seat (c) 				
- fixed	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**
- height adjustable	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**
Outer rear seats (d) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat (d) 	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

7

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(d) To install a child seat at the rear, backward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

U: seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat backrest inclined fully forwards.

U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

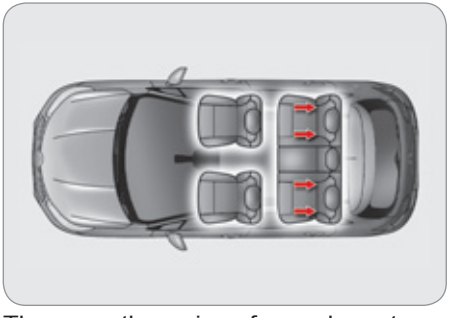
X: seating position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

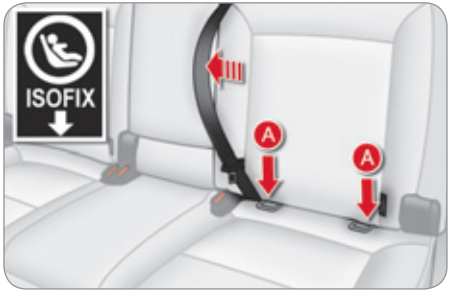
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulation**.

The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.



This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**.

Some seats also have an **upper strap**, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER:**

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- raise the carpet cover on the TOP TETHER,
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Follow strictly the fitting instructions provided by with the child seat.

For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

ISOFIX CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	Installed only in the "forward-facing" position. Attached to the rings **A**, as well as the ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using a top strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying. This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	Installed backward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base includes a support leg, adjustable for height, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used forward facing. This child seat **can not** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that it be used rearward facing up to 3 years.

Follow the instructions for fitting the child seats given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

LOCATIONS FOR ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Infant car seat***		**"rear facing"**			**"rear facing"**		**"forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
ISOFIX child seats universal and semi-universal which can be installed on the rear outer seats	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rear facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the paragraph "ISOFIX mountings".

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
** The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured on the lower rings of a vehicle ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearwards facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forwards facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the "forward-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat , in contact if possible.

You mst remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger airbag when a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

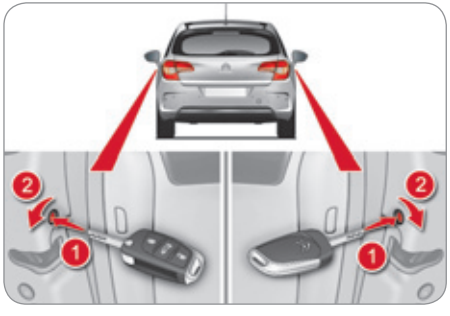
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

MANUAL CHILD LOCK

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door. It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

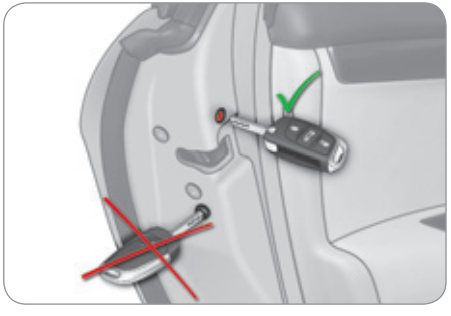
Locking



☞ Using the ignition key, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.



Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



- Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

HORN

Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following circumstances:

- immediate danger,
- overtaking a cyclist or pedestrian,
- approaching a location lacking visibility.

BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS (ESP)

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and electronic stability control (ESC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control.**

This system detects situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud, ...), when it proves impossible to move off, it may be useful to temporarily deactivate the ESP/ASR systems to allow the wheels to spin freely and so allow movement of the vehicle.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), if you are unable to make progress, it may be advisable to temporarily deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can spin freely and allow the vehicle to move.



☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located near the steering wheel.

If the indicator lamp in the button comes on, this indicates that these systems are deactivated.

It is recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp in the instrument panel and the **"ESP OFF"** indicator lamp in the button come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a fault with these systems.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The trajectory control systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems is assured provided that manufacturer's recommendations are observed on:

- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

SEAT BELTS

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

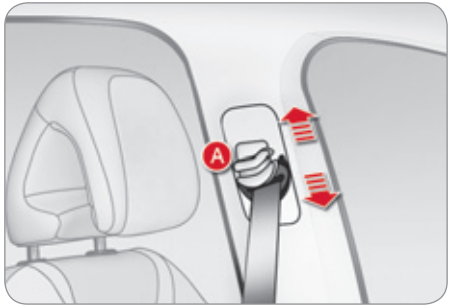
Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Driver's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **1** or **2** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt, with force limiter and, for the outer seats, an effort limiter.



Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



3. Right hand rear seat belt warning lamp.
4. Centre rear seat belt warning lamp.
5. Left hand rear seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AIRBAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the centre rear passenger).

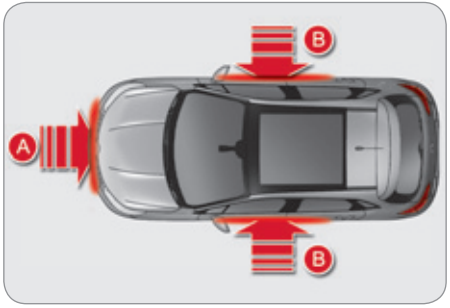
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

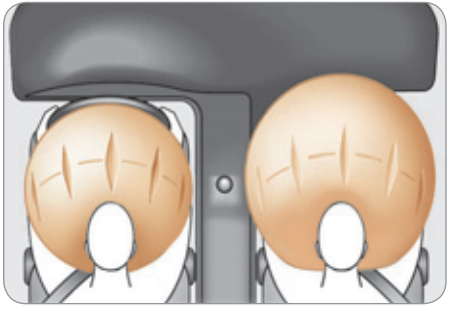
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

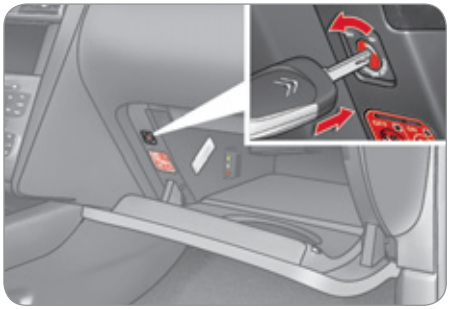
The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



According to version, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

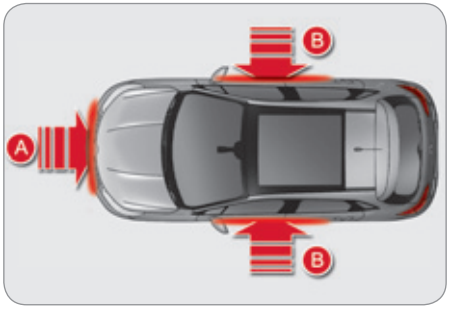


Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer (see "Practical information - § Accessories").

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



The electric parking brake combines 2 operational modes:

- **Automatic Application/Release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),
- **Manual Application/Release**
  The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

Programming the mode

Depending on the country of sale of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation / deactivation is done using the vehicle configuration menu; refer to the section covering the configuration of your vehicle's systems.

The parking brake is then applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the brake is not applied.

It is recommended that you do not apply the parking brake in very cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Deactivate the automatic functions and release the parking brake manually.

Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control lever.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied.

Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** control **A**.



The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,
- display of the message "Parking brake off".

If you pull control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. This is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake on maximum" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on may vary (e.g. on a ferry, on a lorry, during towing),

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Parking brake on".

Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing).

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Electronic gearbox**: select position **A**, **M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Parking brake off".

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Immobilising the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal, if the parking brake has not been applied.

Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

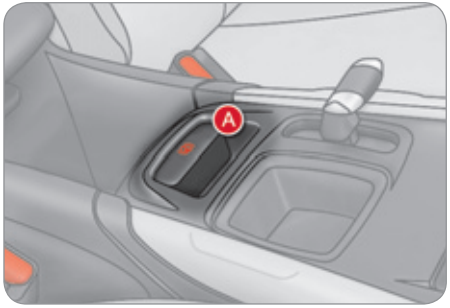
Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** the control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamps in the control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off and display of the message "Parking brake off".

If the parking brake develops a fault **while applied** or if the battery runs flat, an emergency release is always possible.

Emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.

The electronic stability control provides stability during emergency braking.

If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake faulty" will be displayed.

In the event of failure of the electronic stability control system, signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, braking stability is then not guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever **A**.

The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

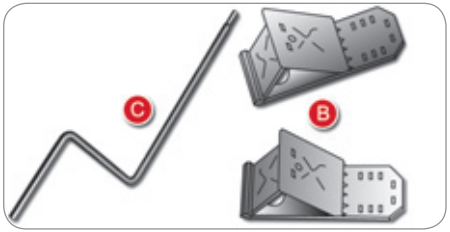
Emergency release



In the event of the electric parking brake malfunctioning or the battery running flat, an emergency device can be used to release the parking brake manually.

Access to tools

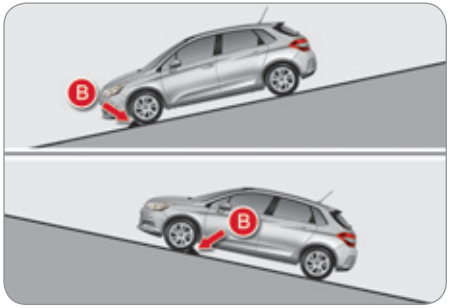
The tools are stowed in the storage box under the boot carpet.



B Chocks*.

C Release crank*.

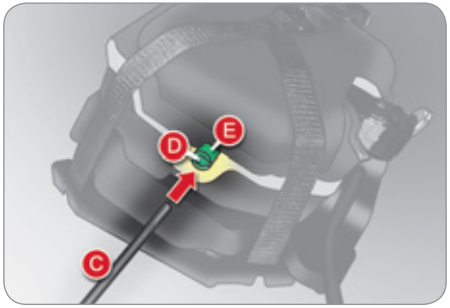
* Available according to equipment: if these tools are not present, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain them.



☞ Immobilise the vehicle (or keep it stationary, if the brake pedal is pressed), with the engine running, by engaging first gear (manual gearbox) or position **M** or **R** (electronic gearbox).

☞ Switch off the engine but leave the ignition on. If it is not possible to immobilise the vehicle, do not operate the control and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

☞ Immobilise the vehicle by placing the blocks in front or behind the two front wheels, opposite to the direction of the slope.



☞ Remove the storage box under the boot carpet for access to the emergency release device.

☞ Pierce the protective cover **D** on the tube **E** with the release crank.

☞ Introduce the release crank into the tube.

☞ Turn the release device clockwise**. For safety reasons**, it is **essential** to continue turning the device until it reaches its stop. The parking brake is released.

☞ Remove the release crank and stow it with the chocks in the storage box under the boot carpet.

- Switch the ignition off and then on to reinitialise the parking brake. If the reinitialisation of the parking brake proves impossible, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- The subsequent time required for application may be longer than during normal operation.

For safety reasons, after this operation it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to replace the protective cover.

Following an emergency unlocking, immobilisation of the vehicle is no longer assured once the manual emergency release has been deployed and the manual control does not allow the re-application of your parking brake.

Take no action, either on the control lever **A**, or stopping starting the engine while the release crank is engaged.

Take care not to allow moisture or dust in the proximity of the protective cover.

Operating faults

If the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message **"Parking brake fault"** and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually.
Display of the message **"Parking brake fault"** and of the following warning lamps: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.
Display of the message **"Parking brake fault"** and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available.

Situations	Consequences
and possibly  flashing	To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. ☞ pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ switch on the ignition. ☞ pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Display of the message **"Parking brake fault"** and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. - The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.
Battery fault: 	- If the battery warning lamp comes on you must stop immediately as soon as the traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, place the two chocks under the wheels). - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

MANUAL PARKING BRAKE



Applying

☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.

When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

ELECTRONIC GEARBOX

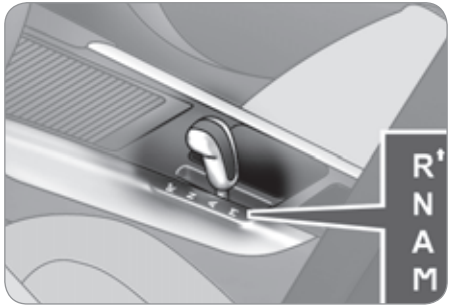
Six-speed electronic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

There are two driving modes:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox, without any action on the part of the driver
- **manual** mode for sequential gear changing by the driver using the steering mounted paddles.

In automated mode, you can temporarily take over control of gear changing.

Gear lever



R. Reverse

☞ With your foot on the brake, lift the lever and push forwards.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.

A. Automated mode.

☞ Move the lever backwards to select this mode.

M. Sequential mode with manual gear changing.

☞ Move the lever backwards then to the left to select this mode, then use the steering mounted control paddles to change gear.

Steering mounted control paddles



+. Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



Gear lever positions

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Gears in sequential mode.

AUTO. This comes on when the automated mode is selected. It switches off on changing to sequential mode.

Engagement of reverse gear is accompanied by an audible signal.

Moving off

- Select position **N**.
- Press the brake pedal down fully.
- Start the engine.



N appears in the instrument panel screen.

N flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, if the gear lever is not in position **N** on starting.

The **Foot on brake** warning lamp comes on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if the brake pedal is not pressed on starting the engine.

- Select automated mode (position **A**) or sequential mode (position **M**) or reverse (position **R**).
- Release the parking brake unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
- Progressively take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Accelerate away.

AUTO and **1**, **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel screen.

You must press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Automated mode

- Select position **A**.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox operates in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear for:

- optimisation of fuel consumption,
- the style of driving,
- the profile of the road.
- the vehicle load.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

Never select neutral **N** when driving.

Temporary control of gear changing

You can temporarily take over control of gear changing using the **"+"** and **"-"** steering mounted paddles: if the engine speed allows, the request to change gear is acted on.

This function allows you to anticipate certain situations such as overtaking a vehicle or the approach to a corner.

After a few moments without any action on the control paddles, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Manual mode

☞ Select position **M**.



The gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only acted on if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow the vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.

You can change mode at any time by moving the gear lever from **A** to **M** or the other way round.

Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Reverse

To engage reverse gear **R**, the vehicle must be immobilised with your foot on the brake pedal.

☞ Select position **R**.

At low high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator flashes and the gearbox goes into neutral automatically. To engage reverse, put the gear lever in position **N**, then position **R**.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral, or
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, **you must apply the parking brake** to immobilise the vehicle.

When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear lever in neutral **N**.

Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, ensure that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Whatever the circumstances, you must manually apply the parking brake when parking, unless the parking brake is programmed in automatic mode.

Operating fault

With the ignition on, the flashing of **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Button "❄" **(snow)**.

Gear lever



P. Park.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M +/-. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

☞ Press forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Press rearwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park

R. Reverse

N. Neutral

D. Drive (Automatic driving)

S. Sport programme

❄. **Snow** programme

1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation

-. Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.

☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.

☞ Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**,

☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

- ☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

SERVICE

When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

You risk damaging the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

HILL START ASSIST

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- when certain conditions of gradient are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:

- if you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- if you are in position **A** or **M** with an electronic gearbox.
- if you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on (not flashing) in the instrument panel.

Operating fault



If a fault occurs with the system, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up.

With an electronic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

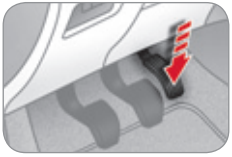
This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, the arrow can be accompanied by the recommended gear.

The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.

A pressure sensor is located in the valve of a each tyres (except the spare wheel).

The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label (see the "Identification markings" section).

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.





In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

- Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment),

  or
- if you have a compressor, the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example, check the four tyre pressures when cold,

  or
- if it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.

The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated or repaired.

The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

Operating fault

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the "service" warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor.

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

STOP & START

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,

- **with an electronic gearbox**, at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or put the gear lever into position **N**.

ECO If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

With an electronic gearbox, for your comfort during parking maoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, for example.

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**:
  - gear lever in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, when you move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox or 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by the display of a message.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and the display of a message.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear lever into position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal.

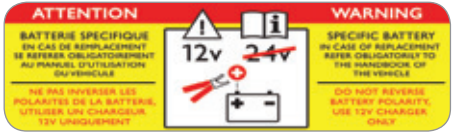
It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key.

Maintenance

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a specific battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop).

Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.



The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. All work on this type of battery must be done only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

9

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM



System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

The lane departure warning system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Activation

☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

Operating fault

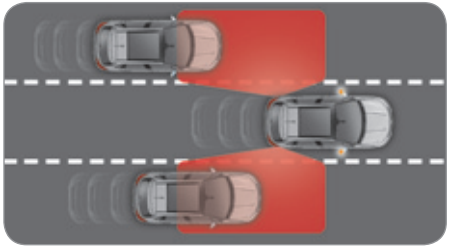
SERVICE In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The detection may be impeded:

- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

BLIND SPOT SENSORS



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.

This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to asses the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.

The blind spot sensor system can never replace the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Operation

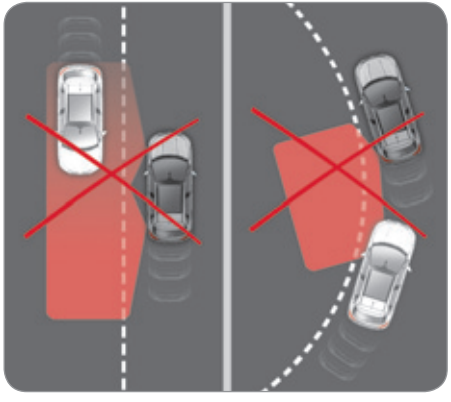


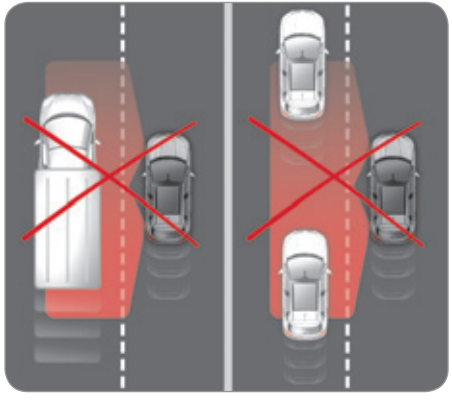
☞ On switching on the ignition, or engine running, press this button to activate the function; the warning lamp comes on.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, cycle - is detected and the following conditions are fulfilled:

- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 75 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- the difference in speed between your vehicle and the other vehicles must be less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan...





No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of stationary objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs...),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a sinuous road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach...) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.



☞ To deactivate the system, press this button again; the warning lamp goes off.

The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault, the warning lamp in the button flashes then goes off.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail...).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

MEMORISING SPEEDS

This memorisation of speeds applies to both the speed limiter and the cruise control.

You can memorise up to 5 speeds in the system. By default, a few speeds are already memorised.

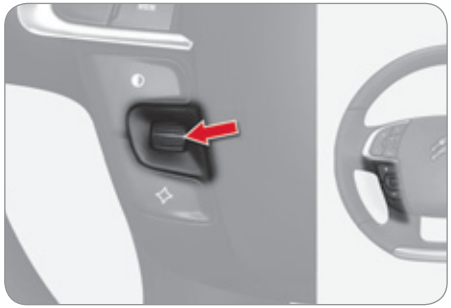
With your Audio system



- Go to the main menu by pressing the **"MENU"** button:
- Select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu and confirm.
- Select "Vehicle parameters" menu and confirm.
- Select the "Driving assistance" line and conform.
- Select "Speeds memorised" line and confirm.
- Modify the speed.
- Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out these operations when stationary.

With the eMyWay satellite navigation system



- Go to the main menu by pressing the left hand thumb wheel at the bottom of the steering wheel.
- Select the "Vehicle parameters" menu and confirm.
- Select the "Driving assistance" line and confirm.
- Select the "Speeds memorised" line and confirm.
- Modify the speed.
- Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.

These operations are only possible when stationary with this system.

Access



- Press the **"MEM"** button to display the list of speeds memorised.

Selection

To select a memorised speed:

- press and hold the "**+**" or "**-**" button; the system stops at the nearest memorised speed,
- press and hold again the "**+**" or "**-**" button to select another memorised speed.

A reminder of the speed and the state of the system (on/off) is displayed in the instrument panel.

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

Operation

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly beyond the point of resistance.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



The functions of this system are grouped together on the steering mounted controls.

1. Speed limiter mode selection wheel.
2. Programmed value decrease button.
3. Programmed value increase button.
4. Speed limiter on / off button.
5. List of memorised speeds display button.
   (see the "Memorising speeds" section)

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

6. Speed limiter on / off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selection of a memorised speed.
   (see "Memorising speeds")



Programming

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).



You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

If speed memorisation is available and activated on your vehicle, the programmed speed will stop at the closest memorised speed; refer to the corresponding paragraph.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.

☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (Pause).



☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.



Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.



Exiting the speed limiter mode

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. It disappears from the screen.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the speed limiter, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

Operation

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and engagement of:

- fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- second gear on the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox, in sequential driving mode,
- position **A** on the electronic gearbox system or **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the ESP system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls



The functions of this system are grouped together on the steering mounted controls.

1. Cruise control mode selection dial.
2. Speed programming/value decrease button.
3. Speed programming/value increase button.
4. Cruise control off/resume button.
5. Memorised speeds display button. (see "Memorising speeds")

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

6. Cruise control off/resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selecting a stored speed. (see "Storing speeds")

The cruise control system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

You are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.



Programming

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).

☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)); the cruise control system is activated (ON).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

If storing speeds is available and activated on your vehicle, the programmed speed will stop at the closest stored speed; refer to the corresponding section.

☞ Stop the cruise control system by pressing button **4**: this is confirmed in the screen (Pause).

☞ Switch on the cruise control again with another press on button **4**.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Exiting cruise control mode

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. It disappears from the screen.











Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

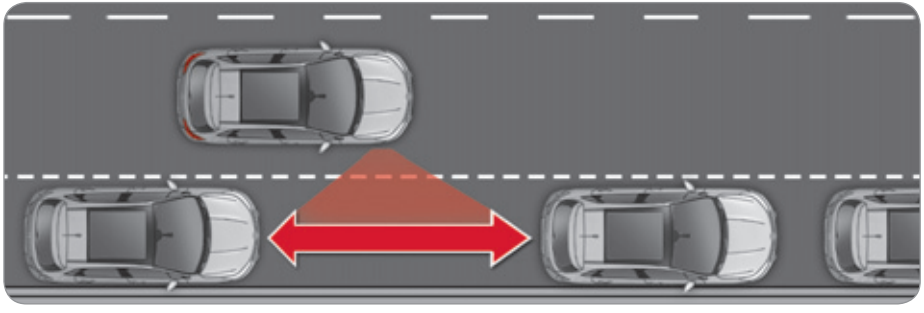
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

On steep climbs or when towing, the programmed speed may not be reached or maintained.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

PARKING SPACE SENSORS



System which measures the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles. It measures the size of the space and gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances needed for manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have two different states:

- **on fixed:** the function is selected by a press on control **A**.
- **off:** the function is not selected,

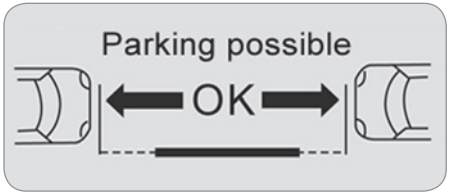
Operation



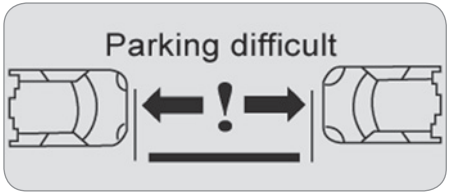
You have identified a parking space:

- Press button **A** to select the function.
- Operate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured; a message is displayed to confirm that measurement is in progress.
- During measurement, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approx. 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.
- Once the measurement has been completed, the system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre by a message in the multifunction screen accompanied by an audible signal.

The function displays the following types of message:



Parking possible



Parking difficult



Parking not advised

The function deselects itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- if measuring is not requested,
- within five minutes of selection of the function,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approx. 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too large, the system may not be able to measure the space.

The system remains available after each measurement and can therefore measure several spaces in succession.

In poor or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are free of dirt, ice or snow.

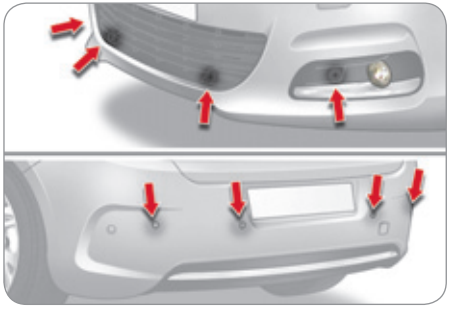
The parking space sensor system deactivates the front parking sensors when measuring forwards.

If there is a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

PARKING SENSORS

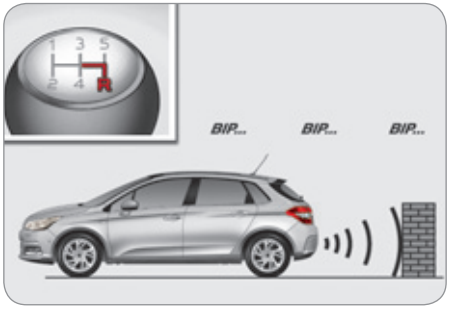
This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (stake, road-works cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.



This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you exit reverse gear.

Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.





Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the multifunction screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Operating fault

SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 year, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed for CITROËN, lubricants to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.

For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain of the best performance for your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performances of your engine, while also protecting the environment.





CITROËN

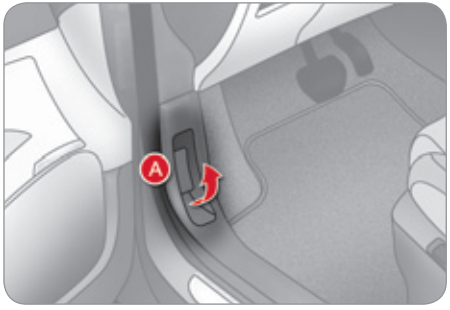
CITROËN prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

BONNET

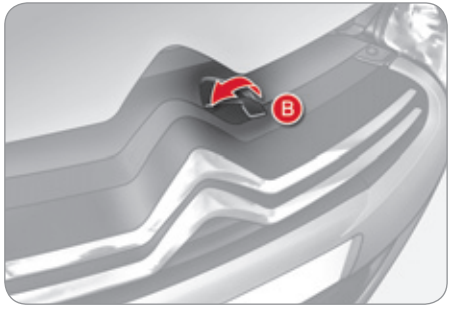
Opening

Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

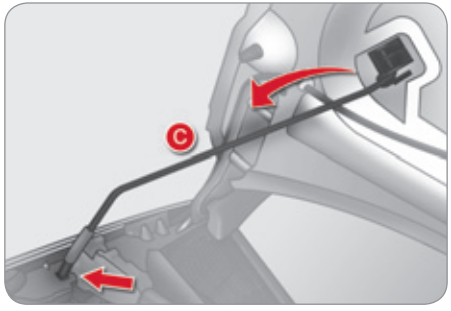


- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.



- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

Do not open the bonnet in high winds.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)

On vehicle fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the "Misfuel prevention (Diesel)" section.

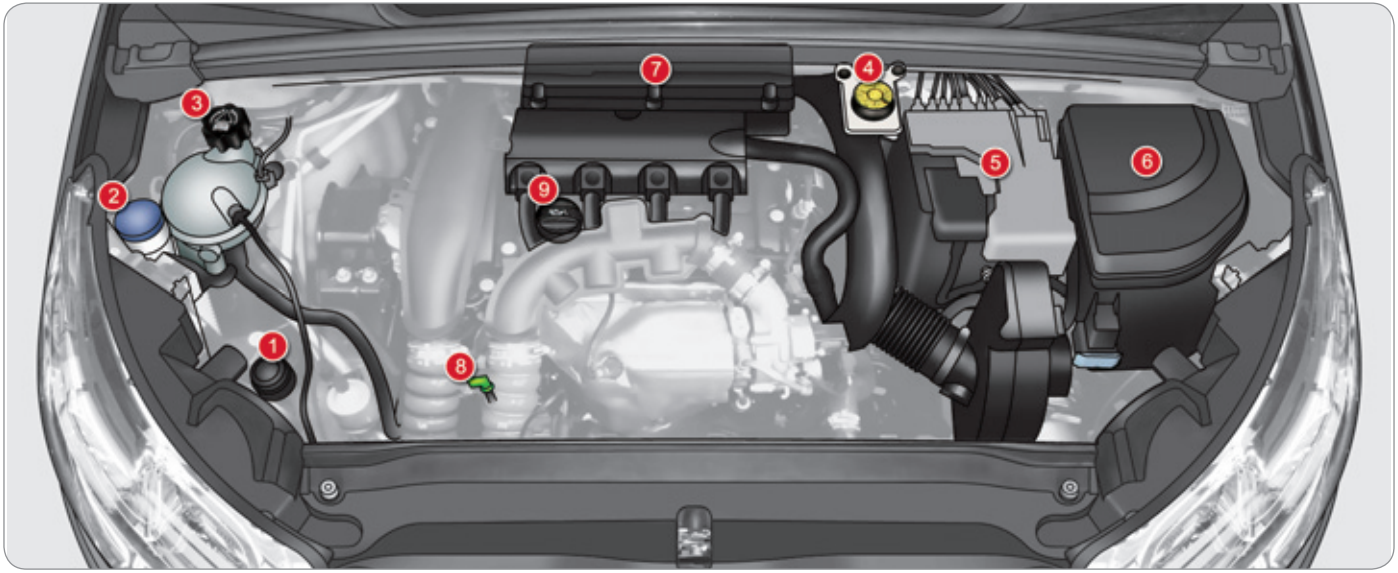
If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

1.6 litre HDi engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Clip the styling cover back in place.
- Close the bonnet.

2 litre HDi engine

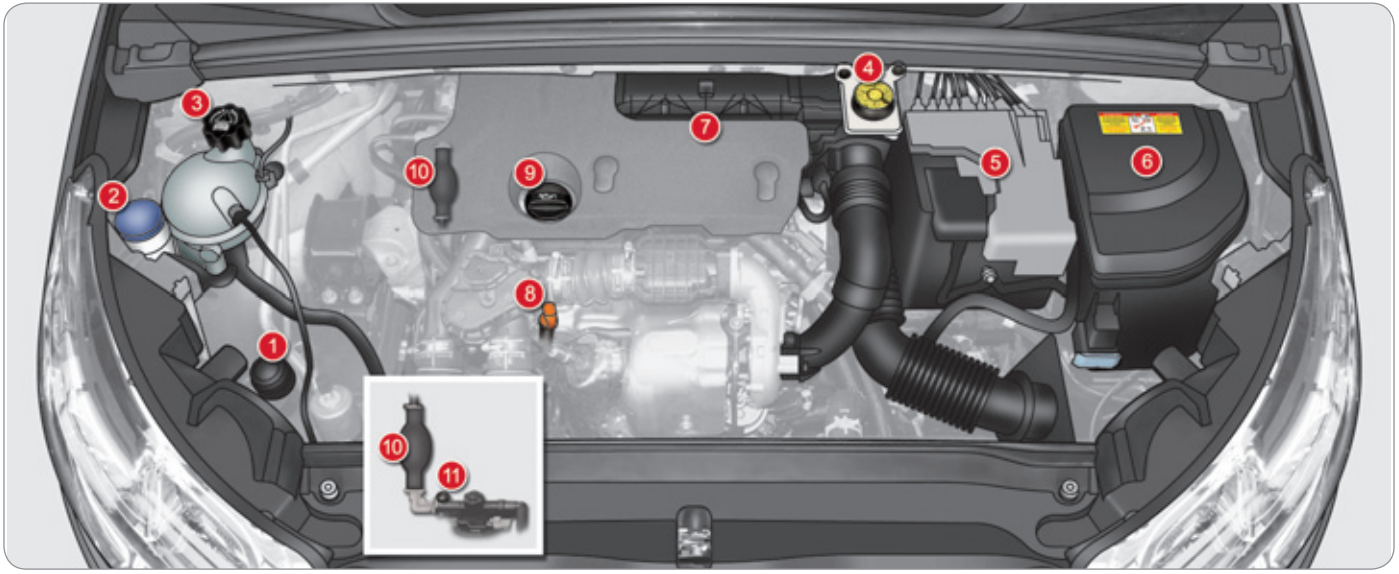
- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- Slacken the bleed screw.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- Tighten the bleed screw.
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter.
- Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place, ensuring that it has clipped correctly.
- Close the bonnet.



PETROL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



DIESEL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

10

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Bleed screw*.

* According to engine.

CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the maintenance and warranty guide. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

It will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

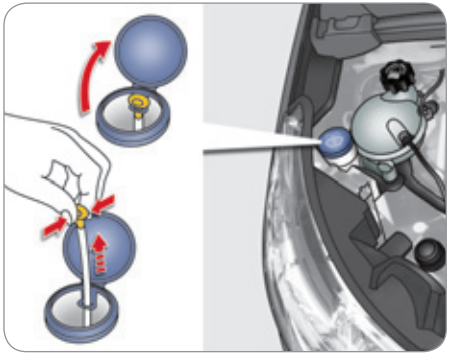
Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

Screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

To check the level or top up the fluid on vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, immobilise the vehicle and switch of the engine.



- ☞ Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.
- ☞ Open the screenwash reservoir filler cap.
- ☞ Take and pinch the level gauge to block its breather.
- ☞ Remove the gauge completely from the reservoir to read the level in the transparent section.
- ☞ Top up if necessary.
- ☞ Refit the filler cap to the reservoir and close the bonnet.

Specification of the fluid

To ensure optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, the fluid should never be topped up or replaced by plain water.

In wintry conditions, the use of a fluid with an ethyl alcohol or methanol base is recommended.

Additive level (Diesel with particle emissions filter)

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by:

- fixed illumination of the particle emissions filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle emissions filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the maintenance and warranty guide and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

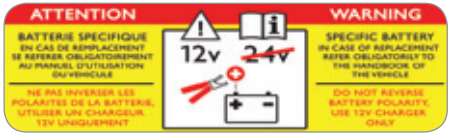
12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle emission filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle emissions filter is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle emissions filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that there is a risk of blockage of the particle emissions filter.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, refer to the "Additive level" section.

On a new vehicle, the first operations of regeneration of the particle emissions filter may be accompanied by the smell of "burning", which is perfectly normal.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the maintenance and warranty guide for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information, refer to the "Electric parking brake - Operating faults" section.

Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Description of the kit





A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar and p.s.i.).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

1. Sealing



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

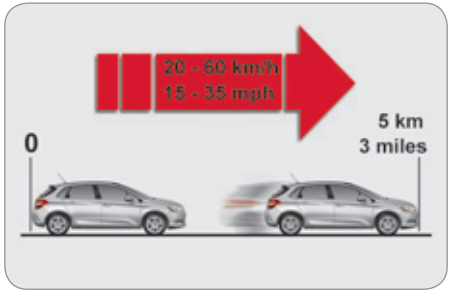
Keep this product out of the reach of children.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.

The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).



☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.

Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

2. Inflation



- Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



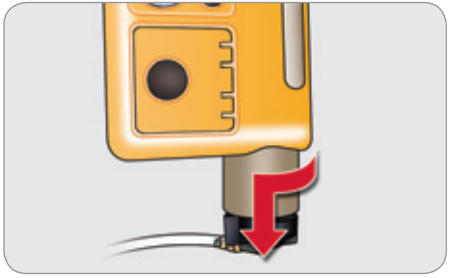
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

  A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

Beware of discharges of fluid.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.

The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.

Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.

  If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.



- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

CHANGING A WHEEL

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear shelf support,
- ☞ with a standard size spare wheel, unclip and remove the box in the middle of the wheel containing the tools,

  or

- ☞ with a "space-saver" spare wheel; lift the wheel at the rear towards you for access to the storage box containing the tools.

List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. "Bolt cover" tool.
   For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

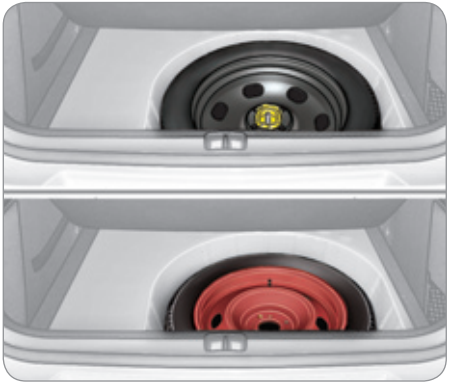


Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel, or for some countries it is the "space saver" type.

For access to the spare wheel, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.

If your vehicle has an electric parking brake, only a space saver wheel can be stowed in the boot.

Taking out the standard wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.



Putting the standard wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.



Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or aqualified workshop.

Removing a wheel



Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.

Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.

Check that the braking warning lamps in the instrument panel are on (not flashing).

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

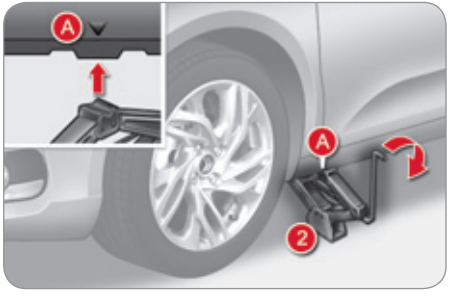
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

List of operations

- ☞ Remove the chromed bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (according to equipment).
- ☞ Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- ☞ Place the jack **2** in contact with one of the two front **A** or rear **B** locations provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until its base plate is in contact with the ground. Ensure that the centreline of the jack base plate is directly below the location **A** or **B** used.



- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.
- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.



* position **R** for an electronic gearbox; **P** for an automatic gearbox.

Fitting a wheel



Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

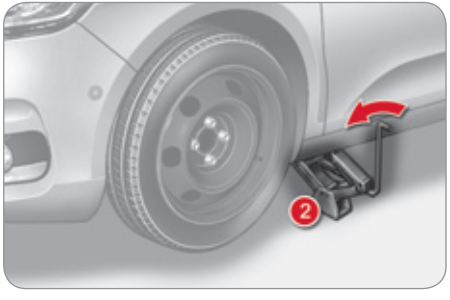
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

List of operations

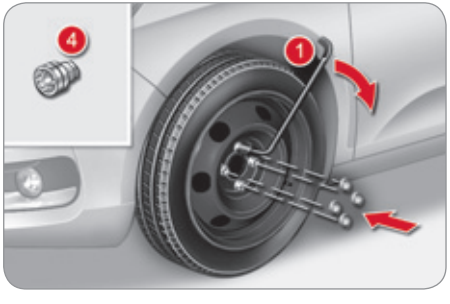
- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the chromed bolt covers on each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.



SNOW CHAINS

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
195/65 R15	9 mm
205/55 R16	
225/45 R17	
225/40 R18	cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Avoid driving on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. It is recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

CHANGING A BULB

The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps

Model with xenon and directional headlamps



1. **Directional dipped/main beam headlamps (D1S-35W).**
2. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
3. **Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (P21/5W XL).**
4. **Foglamps (H11-55W).**

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (H21 clear).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7 - 55W).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H1 - 55W).**
4. **Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (P21/5W XL).**
5. **Foglamps (H11 - 55W).**

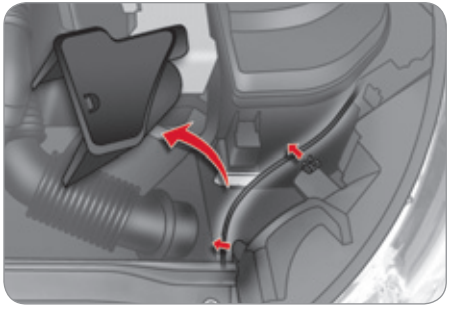
Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S-35W) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.

Access to bulbs

Depending on the engine and only on the left hand side, you must first carry out the following operations for access to the protective covers on the bulbs.



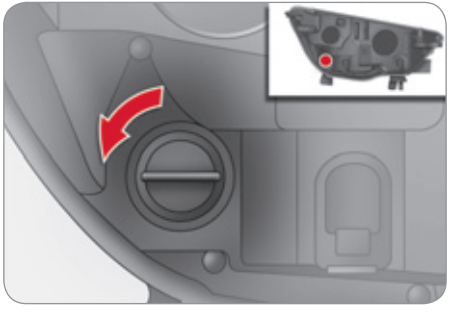
- Remove the air deflector by unclipping each of its three attachment points.
- Unclip the bonnet release cable at its two fixings.
- Move the cable down.

After changing the failed bulb, remember to put everything back in place (cable and air deflector).

Changing direction indicator bulbs

Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

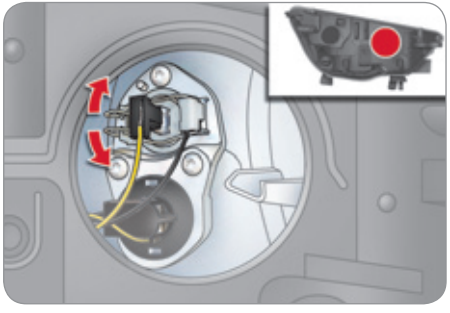
Model with halogen headlamps



- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull out the bulb and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Model with Xenon headlamps



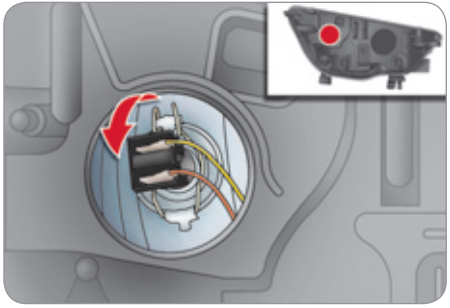
- Remove the protective cover by pulling on its tongue.
- Disconnect the electrical connector.
- Separate the springs to release the bulb.
- Pull the bulb out and replace it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.

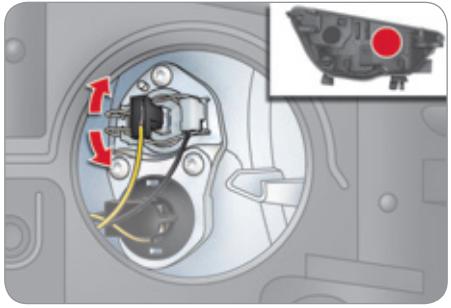
Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (only on models with halogen headlamps)



- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- Extract the bulb and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

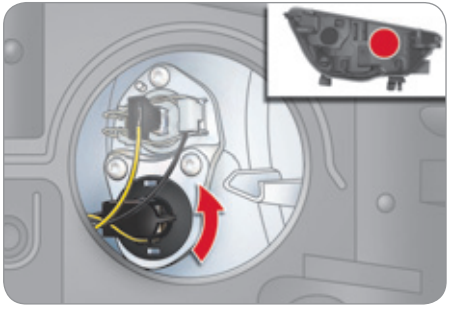
Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (only on models with halogen headlamps)



- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Squeeze the springs to release the bulb.
- Pull out the bulb and replace it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

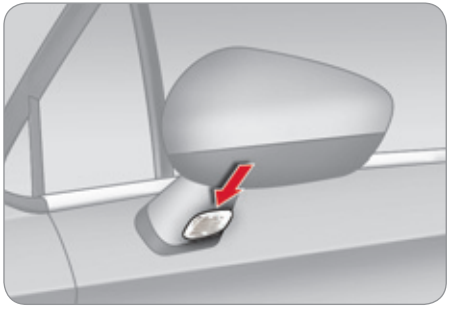
Changing daytime running lamp/ sidelamp bulbs



- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

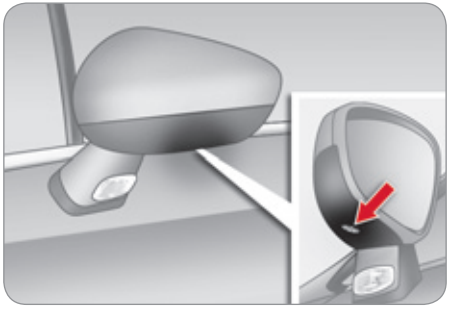


- Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- Disconnect the repeater connector.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.

Changing the side spotlamps



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing foglamp bulbs



- Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the finisher.
- Pull and lever to unclip the bumper finisher (the parking sensor stays with the finisher).
- Remove the two module fixing screws and remove it from its housing.
- Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

To replace these bulbs you may also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



1. **Brake/sidelamp (P21/5W).**
2. **Direction indicator (PY21W amber).**
3. **Reversing lamp (P21W).**
4. **Rear foglamp (P21W).**

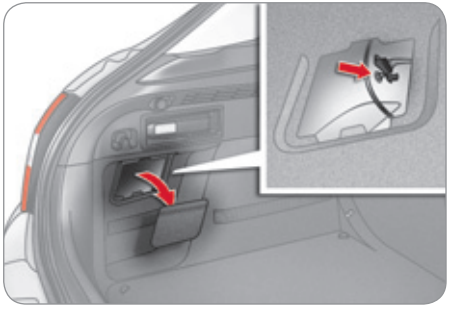
Amber bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour.

The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.

Changing bulbs

These four bulbs are changed from inside the boot:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ remove the access flap from the corresponding side trim panel,
- ☞ unclip the lamp unit connector,
- ☞ As a precaution, place a cloth in the bottom of the housing to catch the nut if it is dropped on removal,
- ☞ slacken the hexagonal nut using a 10 mm tube spanner then remove the nut by hand,
- ☞ remove the two bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ extract the lamp unit carefully pulling in its middle towards the outside,

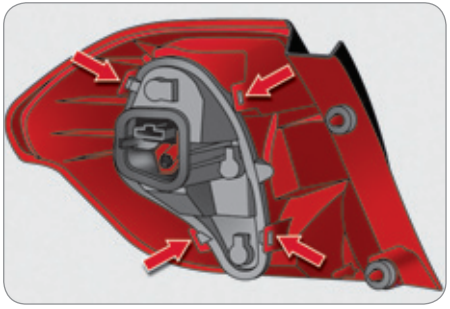


- ☞ spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

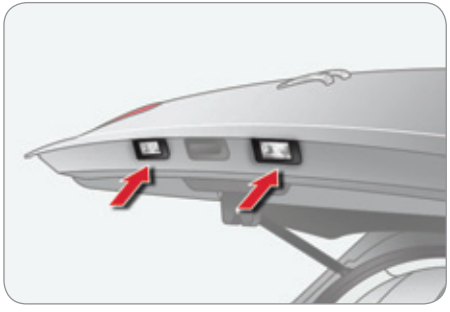
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.

Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp.



Number plate lamps (W5W)



To facilitate the removal of the lamp, carry out this operation with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the lens cutout.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

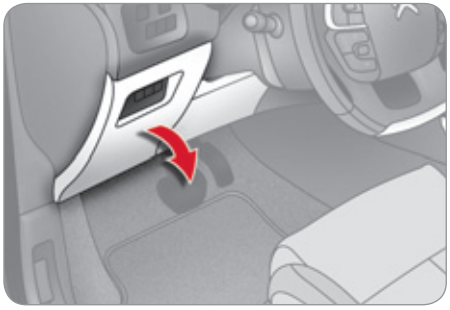
To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

Third brake lamp (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CHANGING A FUSE



Access to the tools

The extraction tweezer is attached to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

For access to it:

- ☞ unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left
- ☞ disengage the cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ remove the carrier, on the back of which the tweezer is fitted.



Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and diagrams in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); the use of a fuse of different rating fuse may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fault recurrs soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good



Failed



Tweezer

Installing electrical accessories

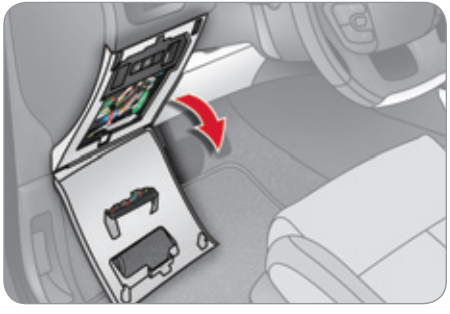
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

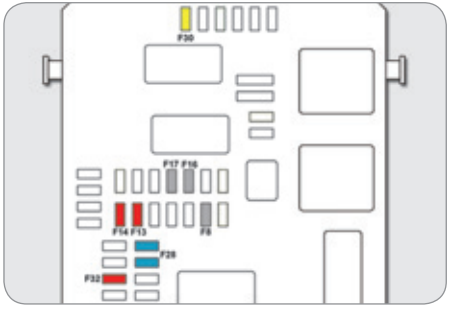
Dashboard fuses

The fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).



Access to the fuses

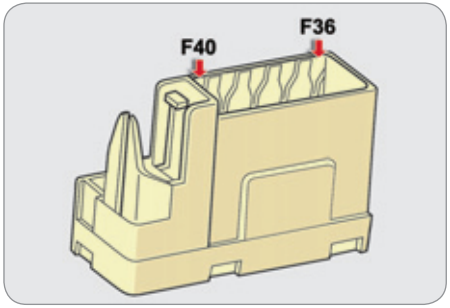
☞ Refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".



Fuse tables

Fusebox 1

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F8	3 A	Alarm siren, alarm ECU.
F13	10 A	12 V socket.
F14	10 A	12 V socket in boot.
F16	3 A	Lighting for the large multifunctional storage unit, rear map reading lamps, glove box illumination.
F17	3 A	Sun visor illumination, front map reading lamps.
F28	15 A	Audio system, radio (after-market).
F30	20 A	Rear wiper.
F32	10 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.



Fusebox 2

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F36	**15 A**	Rear 12 V socket.
F37	**-**	Not used.
F38	**-**	Not used.
F39	**-**	Not used.
F40	**25 A**	230 V / 50 Hz socket.

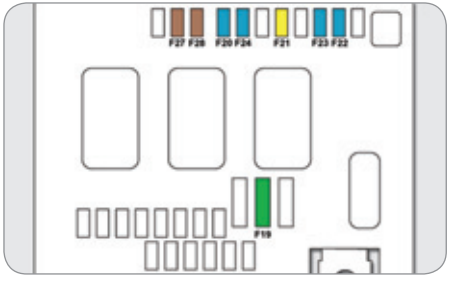
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).



Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure sealing of the fusebox.

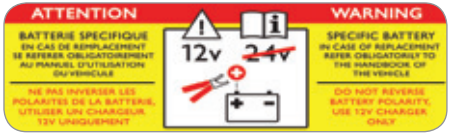


Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F19	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F20	15 A	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F21	20 A	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	15 A	Horn.
F23	15 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	15 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F27	5 A	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F28	5 A	Right-hand dipped headlamp.

12 V BATTERY

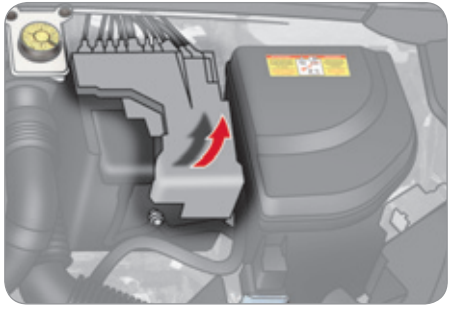
Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,
- lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

Before doing any work

Immobilise the vehicle: apply the parking brake, put the gearbox in neutral, then switch off the ignition.

Check that all electrical equipment is switched off.

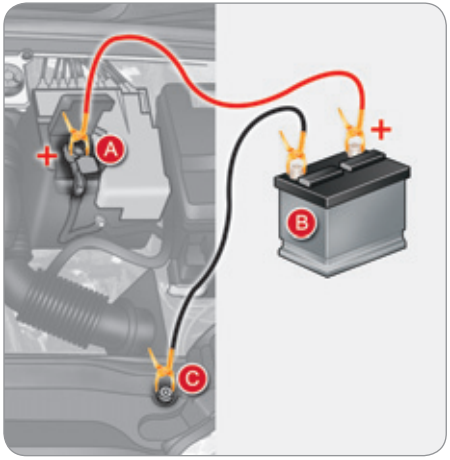
Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables.

First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).

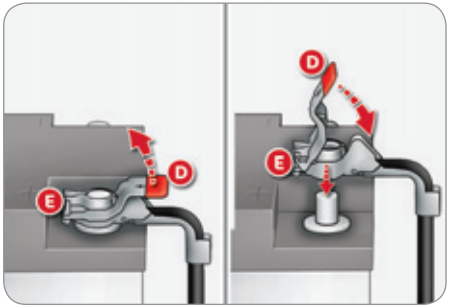
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

  If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.



Disconnecting the (+) cable

- Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

Reconnecting the (+) cable

- Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.

Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Reinitialisation after reconnection

After any reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait at least one minute before starting, to allow time for the initialisation of the electronic systems.

By referring to the corresponding sections, you should set or initialise the following systems yourself:

- one-touch electric windows,
- time and date,
- audio and navigation system settings.

Check that no alert message or warning lamp comes on after switching on the ignition.

However, if minor problems persist after carrying out these operations, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

With Stop & Start, the battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

- Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Connect the battery starting with the negative terminal (-).
- Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.

Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Wash your hands afterwards.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic or automatic gearbox.

LOAD REDUCTION MODE

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the period of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.

Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at the same time on the navigation system, it will be interrupted after 10 minutes.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically the next time the vehicle is driven.

- ☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available to you will then be double the period for which the engine is left running. However, this period will always be between five and thirty minutes.

This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).

CHANGING A WIPER BLADE

Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

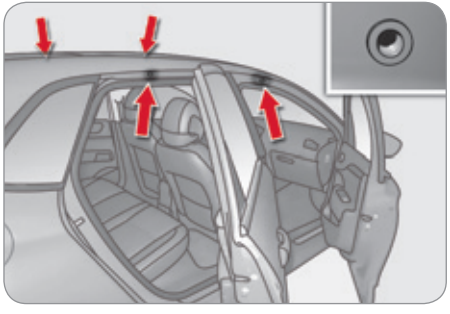
- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

FITTING ROOF BARS

For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.



When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed.

The roof bar fixings include a stud to be fitted to the hole at each fixing point.

Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the bars.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof rack, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): **80 kg**.

As this value is subject to change, check the maximum load figure given in the guide provide d with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.

☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removal

☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen when:

- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- towing,
- driving at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

* According to country.

TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

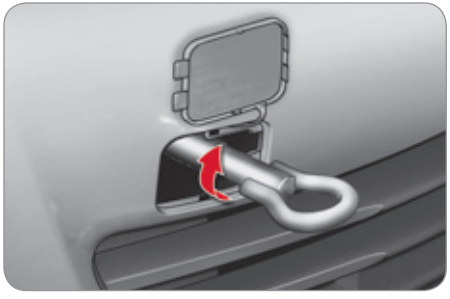
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- 4 wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

Towing your vehicle



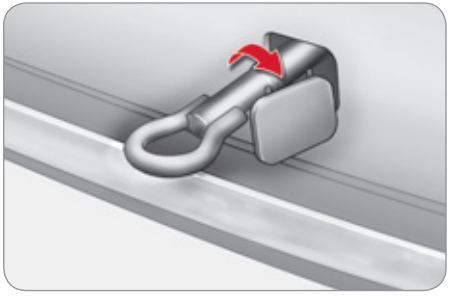
- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.

- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on an electronic or automatic gearbox).

  Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition one notch and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

TOWING A TRAILER

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or installation of a bicycle carrier, with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

AUDIO PRE-EQUIPMENT

Your vehicle is equipped with certain factory-fitted audio equipment:

- a dual-function aerial at the rear of the roof,
- a coaxial aerial cable,
- basic interference suppression,
- cabling for speakers in the front doors and tweeters in the dashboard,
- cabling for speakers in the rear doors,
- two 8-way connectors.

Before installing a radio unit or speakers in your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a suitable wiring harness.

Fitting an audio unit

The audio unit is fitted in place of one of the storage boxes located above the heating and air conditioning control panel.



☞ Unclip the storage box on each side using a screwdriver and pull out.

You will then have access to an aerial coaxial cable and two 8-way connectors.

Then refer to the instructions provided with your audio unit.

Fitting speakers

It is possible to fit:

- 165 mm diameter speakers in the front doors,
- 130 mm diameter speakers in the rear doors,
- 22.5 mm diameter tweeters in the top of the dashboard.

Connectors

8-way connector (A)

A1: -
A2: -
A3: -
A4: -
A5: -
A6: (+) Ignition positive (in this case, the audio equipment only operates when the ignition is on)
A7: (+) Permanent
A8: Earth

8-way connector (B)

B1: (+) Rear right speaker
B2: (-) Rear right speaker
B3: (+) Front right speaker and tweeter
B4: (-) Front right speaker and tweeter
B5: (+) Front left speaker and tweeter
B6: (-) Front left speaker and tweeter
B7: (+) Rear left speaker
B8: (-) Rear left speaker

Never use a separate wire to connect the (+) of your audio equipment (risk of discharging of the battery).

ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a trade vehicle to a private car and vice-versa.

"Comfort":

door deflectors, side window blinds, rear screen blind, insulated module, coat hanger fixed to head restraint, reading lamp, mirror for caravan, cruise control, scented air freshener and cartridges, parking sensors...

"Transport systems":

boot carpet, boot liner, boot net, boot spacers, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

"Styling":

gear lever knobs, aluminium foot rest, alloy wheels, wheel embellishers, chrome mirror shells, chrome door aperture finishers, door sill finishers, tailgate lower chrome finisher...

If a towbar and wiring harness are fitted outside the CITROËN dealer network, the installation must be done using the vehicle's electrical pre-equipment and in line with the manufacturer's recommendations.

"Security and safety":

anti-intrusion alarm, microwave sensor, anti-tilt sensor, stolen vehicle tracking system, child seats and booster cushions, breathalyser, first aid kit, fire extinguisher, warning triangle, high visibility vest, dog guard, pet seat belt, wheel security bolts, snow chains, non-slip covers, front foglamp kit...

"Protection":

mats*, seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, door sill protectors, mud flaps, door protective rubbing strips, bumper protection strips, protective covers for pets, vehicle cover...

* To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that mats are correctly positioned and secured,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

"Multimedia":

audio systems, steering mounted audio controls, speakers, Hi-Fi module, Bluetooth hands-free system, portable satellite navigation system, semi-integral support bracket for portable navigation system, mapping update CD, driving assistant, portable video screen, portable video support bracket, 230 V/50 Hz socket, 230 V/50 Hz adaptor, iPhone® compatible mobile phone charger, mobile phone/smartphone bracket, Wi-Fi on board...

By going to a CITROËN dealer, you can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (interior and exterior) - including ecological products in the "TECHNATURE" range -, products for topping up (screenwash...), touch-up pens and paint aerosols for the exact colour of your vehicle, recharges (cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...), ...

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety vest, warning triangle, breathalyzers and spare bulbs and fuses available in the vehicle.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this precaution. You are advised to contact a CITROËN representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

TECHNICAL DATA

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES			
Model codes: NC...	**8FR0**	**5FS0**	**5FS9 5FS9/D***	**5FV8/P**
PETROL ENGINES	**VTi 95**	**VTi 120**		**THP 155**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 397	1 598		1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 72.5	77 x 85.8		77 x 85.8
Max power: EU standard (kW)**	70	88		115
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000		6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	135	160		240
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 250		1 400
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded
Catalytic converter	yes	yes		yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)	Electronic (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25	4.25	4.25	4.25

* According to country of sale.

** The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)				
Petrol engines	**VTi 95**	**VTi 120**		**THP 155**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Automatic**	**Electronic**
Model codes: NC...	**8FR0**	**5FS0**	**5FS9 5FS9/D**	**5FV8/P**
- Unladen weight	1 200	1 205	1 270	1 275
- Kerb weight	1 275	1 280	1 345	1 350
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 720	1 765	1 755	1 805
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 920	3 065	3 055	3 205
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	1 200	1 300	1 300	1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 450	1 550	1 550	1 560
- Unbraked trailer	635	640	670	675
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES				
Model codes: NC...	**9HJC**	**9HP0**	**9HR8 9HR8/S**	**9HR8/PS 9HR8/1PS 9HR8/2PS**	**RHE8**
DIESEL ENGINES	**HDi 90**	**HDi 90 PEF**	**HDi 110 PEF**		**HDi 150 PEF**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560	1 560		1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3		85 x 88
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	68	68	82		110
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000	3 600		3 750
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230	230	270		340
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750	1 750		2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes		yes
Particle emissions filter (PEF)	no	yes	yes		yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)					
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75	-

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)						
Diesel engines	**HDi 90**	**HDi 90 PEF**	**HDi 110 PEF**	**e-HDi 110 PEF**		
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Electronic**	
Model codes: NC...	**9HJC**	**9HP0**	**9HR8**	**9HR8/S**	**9HR8/PS 9HR8/1PS**	**9HR8/2PS**
- Unladen weight	1 205	1 205	1 275	1 280	1 290	1 205
- Kerb weight	1 280	1 280	1 350	1 355	1 365	1 280
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 745	1 790	1 810	1 820	1 825	1 825
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 545	2 890	3 110	3 120	3 125	2 225
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12 % gradient	800	1 100	1 300	1 300	1 300	400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	1 050	1 350	1 550	1 550	1 550	600
- Unbraked trailer	640	640	675	670	680	400
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75	75	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)	
Diesel engines	**HDi 150 PEF**
Gearboxes	**Manual**
Model codes: NC...	**RHE8**
- Unladen weight	1 320
- Kerb weight	1 395
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 885
- Gross train weight (GTW) on 12 % gradient	3 385
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12 % gradient	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	1 750
- Unbraked trailer	695
- Recommended nose weight	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

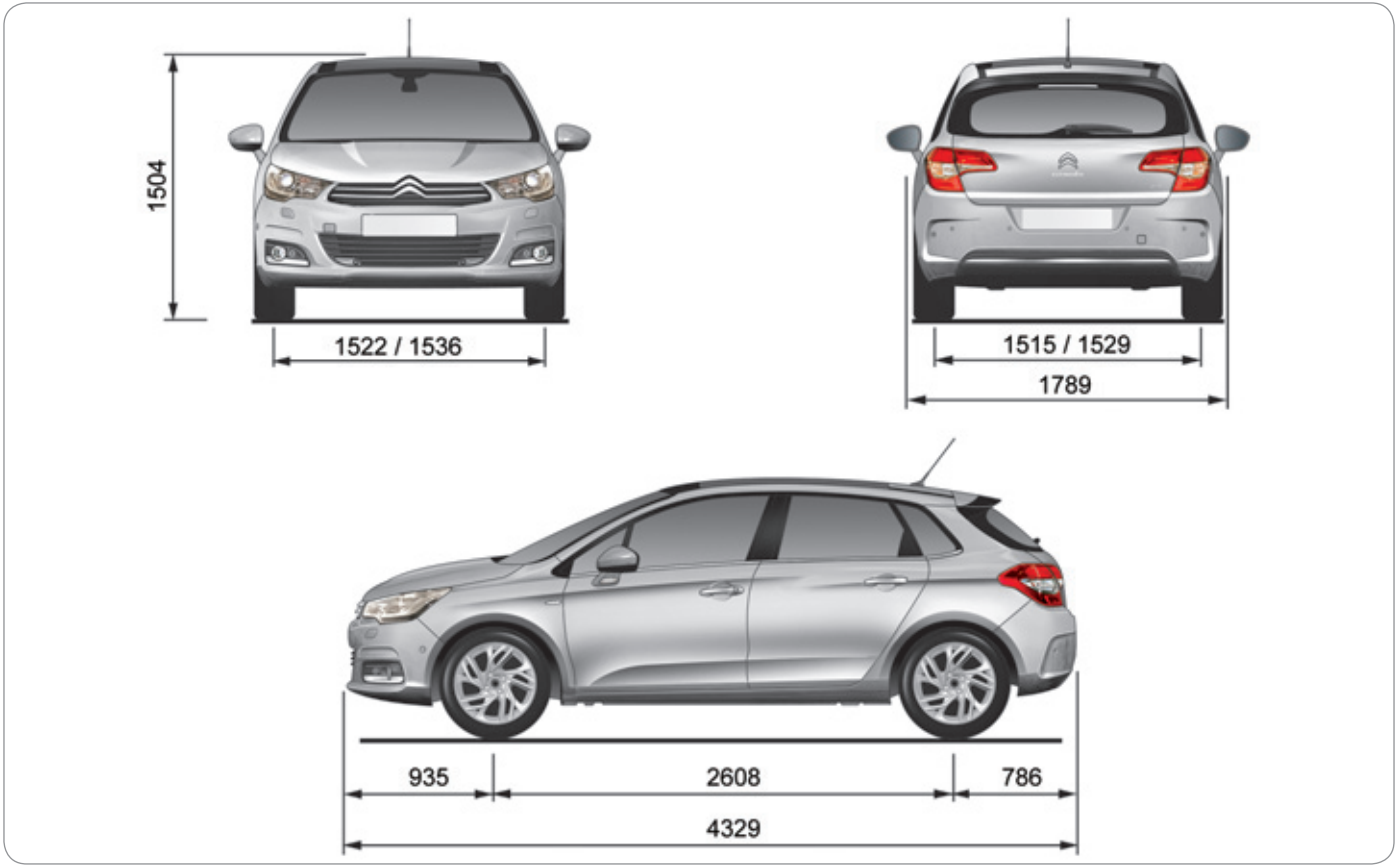
WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg) - C4 ENTERPRISE VERSIONS (2-seat)		
Diesel engines	**HDi 90 PEF**	**HDi 110 PEF**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**
Model codes: NC...	**9HP0**	**9HR8**
- Unladen weight	1 200	1 270
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 745	1 810
- Payload (including the driver)	545	540
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 845	3 110
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	1 100	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	635	670
- Recommended nose weight	75	75

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

DIMENSIONS (IN MM)



IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.

A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the suspension damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification number on the dashboard.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

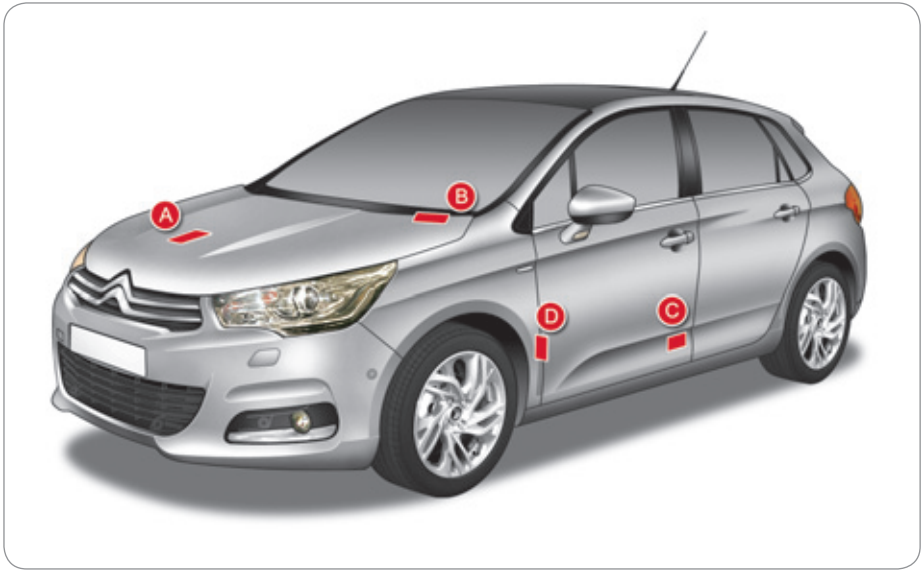
The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the driver's centre pillar.

D. Tyre/paint label.

This label is affixed to the driver's front pillar.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.



The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

CITROËN Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the CITROËN Localised Emergency Call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call. The green LED goes off.

Pressing this button (at any time) for more than 8 seconds cancels the call.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the CITROËN Localised Emergency Call centre which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.



If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

If you benefit from the CITROËN eTouch offer, you also have available additional services in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on www.citroen.com.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.
If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.
In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.



eMyWay

SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
MULTIMEDIA BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE AUDIO SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps - Control panel	p.	236
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	238
03	General operation	p.	239
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	241
05	Traffic information	p.	254
06	Using the telephone	p.	257
07	Radio	p.	267
08	Music media players	p.	271
09	Audio settings	p.	277
10	Configuration	p.	278
11	Screen menu map	p.	279
	Frequently asked questions	p.	283

01 FIRST STEPS

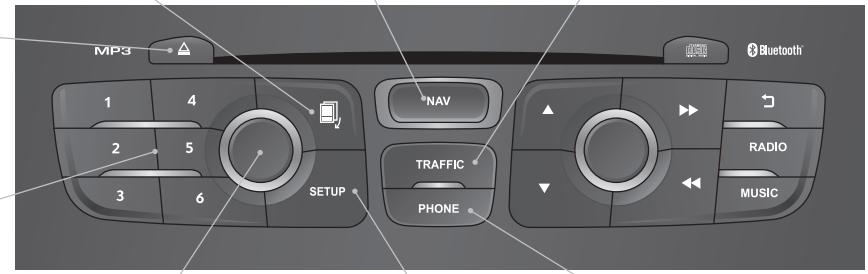
MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu and display the recent destinations.

Open the "**Traffic information**" menu and display the current traffic alerts.

Continuous press: reinitialisation of the system.



Short press: select pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.

Rotary control knob:

Short press without the engine running: on / off.

Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.

Rotation: volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).

Open the "**Configuration**" menu.

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the navigation demonstration mode.

Open the "**Telephone**" menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.

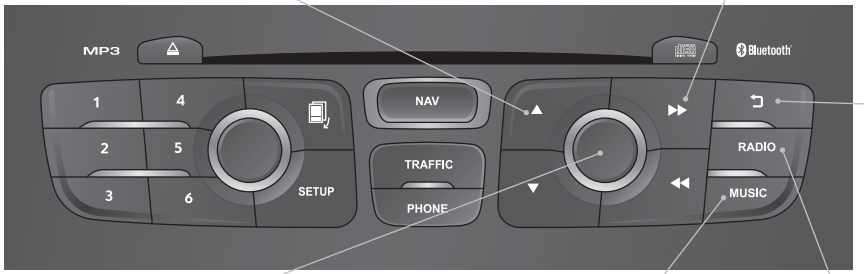
01 FIRST STEPS

Select:
- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in "**Move the map**" mode.

Select:
- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in "**Move the map**" mode.



Abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.

Long press: return to the permanent display.

Selection and OK confirmation knob:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

Access to the "**MUSIC**" menu, and display of the CD/MP3/Apple® tracks and folders.

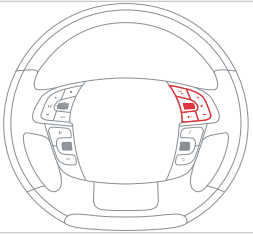
Long press: display the audio settings screen for the "**MEDIA** (CD/USB/iPod/Streaming/AUX)" sources.

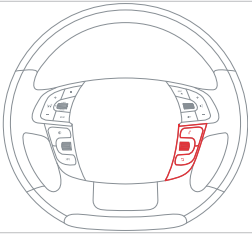
Access to the "**RADIO**" menu and display the list of stations received.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the radio tuner source.

Long press: open the "**Audio settings**" menu: music ambience, bass, treble, loudness, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume adjustment.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS









- Change the audio source.
  Long press: mute.



- Volume increase.



- Volume decrease.



- Radio: display the list of stations.
  Media: display the list of tracks.



- Rotation
  Radio -automatic selection of next / previous frequency.
  Media: previous / next track.
- Press then rotation: access to 6 preset stations.





- TEL button:
  Access to the telephone menu:
  Call list / Contacts / Hands-free mode / Answer / Hang up.
  Accept an incoming call.
  Long press: reject an incoming call or end the current call.



- Move in the menus.
  Zoom the map in and out
  Press: confirmation



- Abandon the current operation.

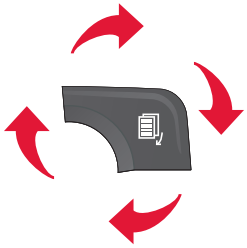
03 GENERAL OPERATION



Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

"TRIP COMPUTER"
(Permanent display)







"FULL SCREEN MAP"

"RADIO"





"MAP IN WINDOW"
(If navigation guidance in progress)



SETUP: **PARAMETERS** date and time, display configuration, sound, vehicle settings.



Changing the audio source:
RADIO: RADIO broadcasts.
MUSIC: playing MUSIC.



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.



For the details of the menus, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

Display according to context



A press on the knob gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

- 1 Activate / Deactivate TA
- 1 Activate / Deactivate RDS
- 1 Change waveband
  - 2 FM
  - 2 AM
- 1 TA

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

- 1 Private mode
- 1 Put call on hold
- 1 DTMF ring tones
- 1 Hang up

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

- 1 Normal
- 1 Random
- 1 Random on all media
- 1 Repetition

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

- 1 Stop / Restore guidance
- 1 Select destination
  - 2 Enter an address
  - 2 Directory
  - 2 GPS coordinates
- 1 Divert route
- 1 Move the map
  - 2 Info. on location
  - 2 Select as destination
  - 2 Select as stage
  - 2 Save this place (contacts)
  - 2 Quit map mode
- 1 Guidance criteria

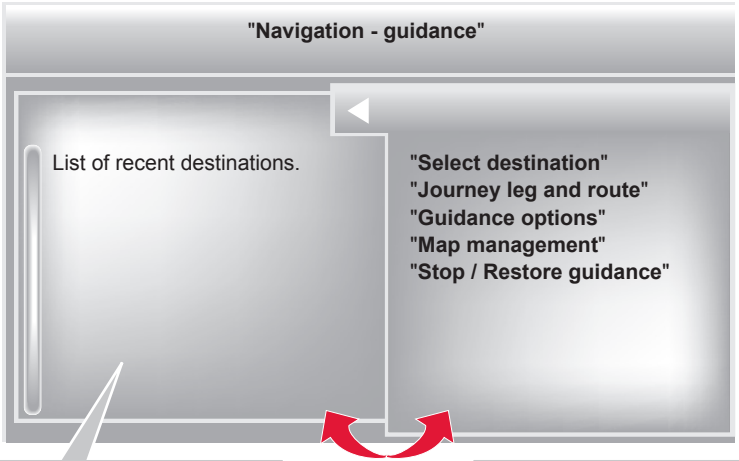
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "Navigation" menu



Press **NAV**.

A short press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.



To make full use of all of the functions of your navigation system, update the mapping regularly. Contact a CITROËN dealer or order your mapping update at http://citroen.navigation.com

To delete the list of recent destinations, select "**Guidance options**" in the navigation menu then select "**Delete last destinations**" and confirm. Select "**Yes**" then confirm.

Deleting just one destination is not possible.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Selecting a destination

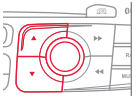
Towards a new destination

1 

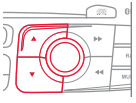
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



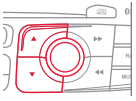
2 
Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Enter an address**" and confirm.



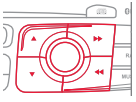
3 
Select the "**Country**" function then confirm.



4 
Select the "**Town**" or "**Post code**" function then confirm.

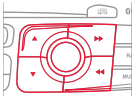


5 
Select the letters in the name of the town or the characters in a post code one at a time, confirming each one with the knob.

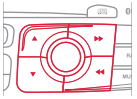


6 
Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm

A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming "**List**" in the screen.

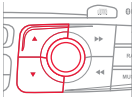


7 
If possible, enter the "**Road**" and "**N°/X**" information in the same way.

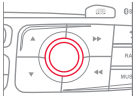


Select "**Archive**" to save the address entered in a contact file.
The system allows up to 400 contact files to be recorded.

8 
Confirm "**OK**" to start guidance.



9 
Select the guidance criteria: "**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**" or optimised "**Distance/Time**", then select the desired restriction criteria: "**With tolls**", "**With Ferry**", or "**Traffic info**" then confirm "**OK**".



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards a recent destination

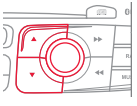
1 

Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2 

Select the desired destination and confirm to start guidance.



Delete recent destinations

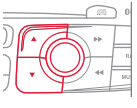
1 

Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2 

Select **"Options"** and confirm and then **"Delete recent destinations"** and confirm.



Towards a contact in the contacts directory

Navigation towards a contact is only possible if it has an address entered in the audio navigation system.

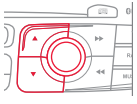
1 

Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



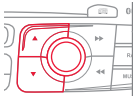
2 

Select **"Select destination"** and confirm, then select **"Directory"** and confirm.



3 

Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm **"OK"** to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards GPS coordinates

1



Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3



Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.

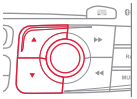


Towards a point on the map

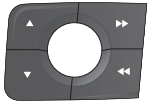
1



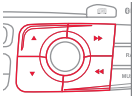
With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



2



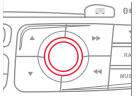
Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



3



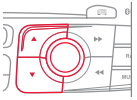
Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4



Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards points of interest (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports…).

1



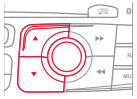
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



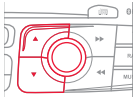
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (see "Towards a new destination"), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.

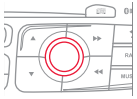


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



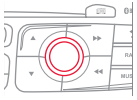
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



List of principal points of interest (POI)


Service station


Garage


CITROËN


Covered car park


Car park


Rest area


Hotel


Restaurant


Cafeteria


Bed and breakfast


Airport


Railway station


Bus station


Port


Industrial estate


Supermarket


Vending machine


Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground


Swimming pool


Winter sports resort


Cinema


Theme parks


Hospital, Chemist, Vet


Police station


School


Town hall


Post office


Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument


Tourist information, Tourist attraction


Risk areas / Danger areas*

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on:
http://citroen.navigation.com.

* According to availability in the country.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Settings for risk area / danger area alerts

1



Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3



Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that Risk area warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.



!

These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

The detailed procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at http://citroen.navigation.com.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Adding a stage

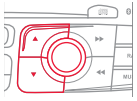
1 

Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2 

Select "**Journey leg and route**" then confirm.



3 

Select "**Add a stage**" then confirm.

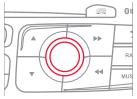
The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by "**Enter an address**", a contact in "**Directory**", or "**Previous destinations**".



4 

Select "**Close to**" a route passing close to the stage or "**Strict**" for a route passing through the stage.

Confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route.



Organising stages

1 

To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select "**Order/delete journey legs**" and confirm.



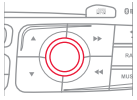
2 

Select the stage that you want to move in the order.



3 

Select and confirm to save the modifications.



Select "**Delete**" to delete the stage.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Route options

Calculation criteria

1



Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").



i

If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Map management

Selecting the points of interest displayed on the map

1



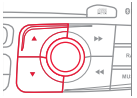
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



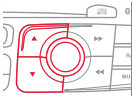
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map details**" and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.



Select "**Default**" to have only "**Filling stations, garages**" and "**Risk areas**" appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



Select "**OK**" then confirm and select "**OK**" again then confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Map orientation

1



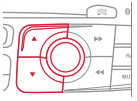
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map orientation**" and confirm.



4



Select:

- "**Vehicle direction**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**North direction**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the "**SETUP**" menu.

Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Navigation voice synthesis

Adjusting the volume / Deactivation

The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the "**SETUP**" / "**Voice synthesis**" menu.

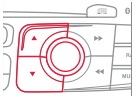
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



3 

Select "**Set speech synthesis**" and confirm.



4 

Select the volume graph and confirm.



5 

Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.



Select "**Deactivate**" to deactivate voice messages.

6 

Select "**OK**" and press the dial to confirm.



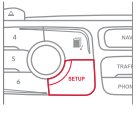
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Male voice / Female voice

1



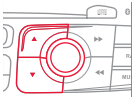
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



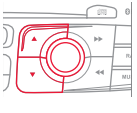
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3

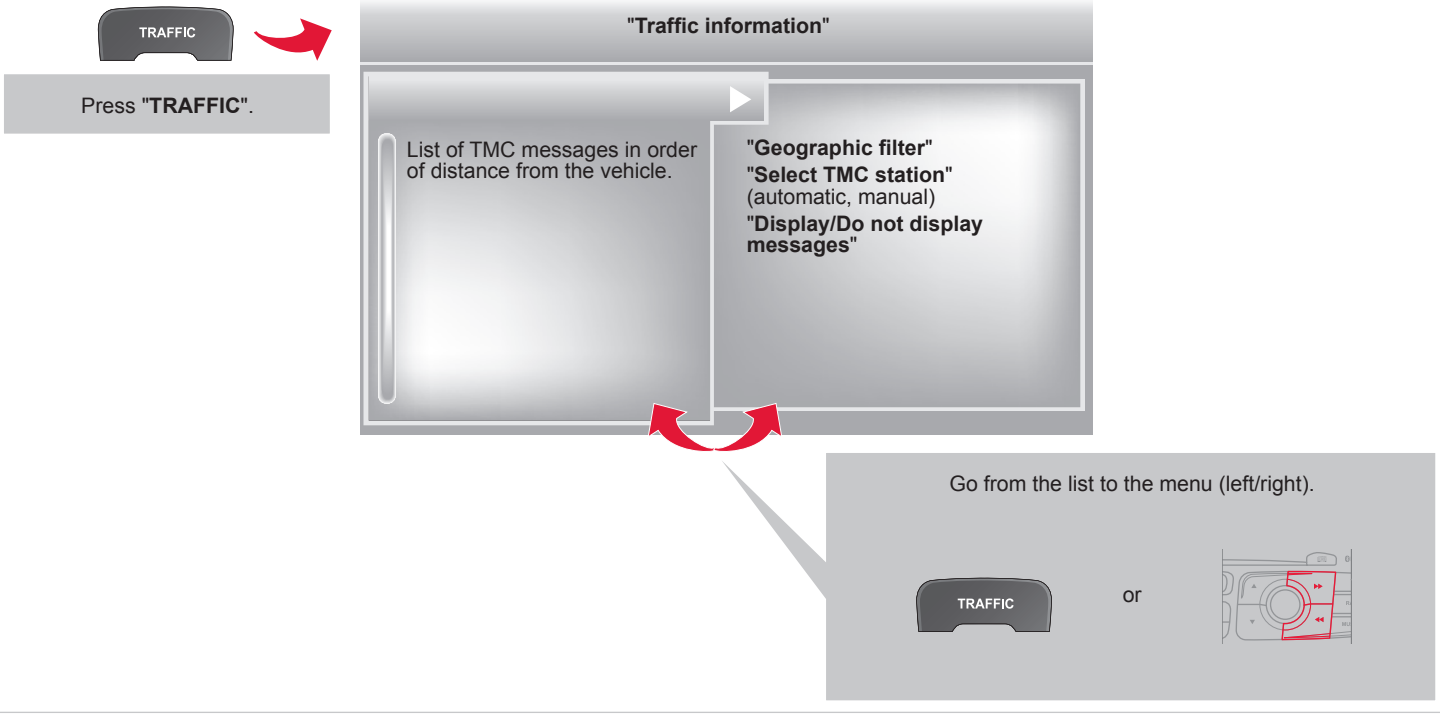


Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice. The system restarts.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "Traffic information" menu



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Configure the filtering and display of TMC messages

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages contain information on traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver in the form of audible announcements and symbols on the navigation map.

The navigation system can then suggest an alternative route to avoid a traffic problem.

1



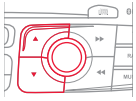
Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the **"Traffic information"** menu.



2



Select the **"Geographic filter"** function and confirm.



3



The system offers a choice of:

- **"Retain all the messages"**,

or

- **"Retain the messages"**
  - **"Around the vehicle"**, (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
  - **"On the route"**.



4



Confirm **"OK"** to save the modifications.



We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Principal TMC symbols

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

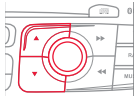
Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, …) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 RADIO Press **RADIO** to display the **"FM / AM band"** menu.



2 Select **"Guidance options"** then confirm.



3 Activate or deactivate **"TA"** then confirm.



The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.

TRAFFIC Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button.

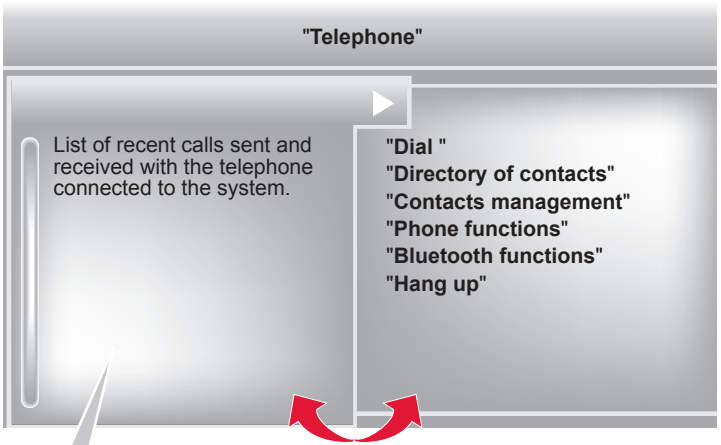
During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press **PHONE**.



In the top bar of the permanent display


No telephone connected.


Telephone connected.


Incoming call.


Outgoing call.


Synchronisation of address book in progress.


Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm **"OK"** to start the call.


Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Pairing a Bluetooth telephone
First connection

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).

Quick procedure from the telephone

1 In the Bluetooth menu of your telephone, select the name of the system from the list of devices detected.



2 Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



3 Enter the same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.



Procedure from the system

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



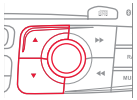
2 PHONE Press this button.



3 Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.



4 Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.
The list of peripheral devices detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



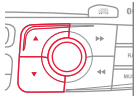
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

5



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then confirm



6



Select "**Connect**" and confirm.



7



The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Hands-free mode**" (telephone only),
- in "**Audio**" mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or "**All**" (for selection of both modes).

Select "**OK**" and confirm.



The "**Hands-free mode**" should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.

The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

8

Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



9



Enter the same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.

Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

On return to the vehicle, the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible).

To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Directory configuration / Synchronisation with the telephone

1



Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



Select "**Sort by Name/First name**" to choose the order in which they appear.



2c



Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.

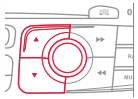


2d



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.

Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

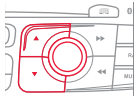


2e



Select "**Synchronization options**":

- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2f



Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Editing, importing or deleting a contact

1 PHONE

Press **PHONE** then select "**Directory of contacts**" and confirm.



2

Select the desired contact and confirm.



3a

Select "**Open**" to view a contact on the telephone or modify a contact saved in the system.



3b

Select "**Import**" to copy a contact from the telephone to the system.



3c

Select "**Delete**" to delete a contact recorded in the system.



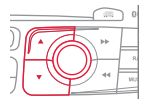
i It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.

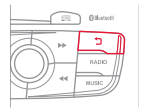
i Once the contact has been imported, the Bluetooth symbol disappears, replaced by the telephone symbol which shows that the contact has been saved in the system.

i In the "**Directory of contacts**" menu, the import and deletion of contacts is done one by one.

4

Select **OK** or press the back button to exit this menu.





06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Making a call

! Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

1



Press **PHONE** twice.



2



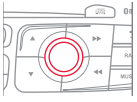
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3



Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.

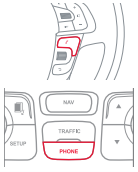


Calling a contact

1



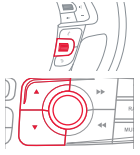
Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.



2



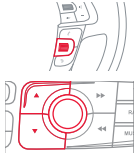
Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.



3



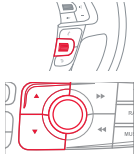
Select the desired contact and confirm.
If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4



Select the number and confirm to start the call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Calling a recently entered number

1

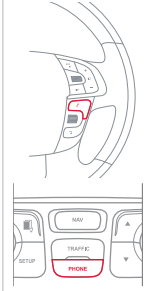


Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,

or



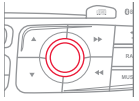
press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

Ending a call

1a



Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.



1b



Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1c



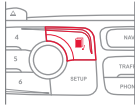
Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1d

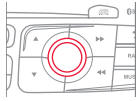


Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.





Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

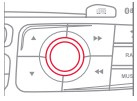
Receiving a call

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2



"Yes" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press **"OK"** to accept the call.
Select **"No"** and confirm to reject the call.





A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.
A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Options during a call*

1

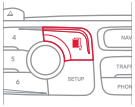


During a call, press the **MODE** button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "**OK**" to open the contextual menu.



Or make a short press on this button.









2a



Select "**Private mode**" and confirm to take the call on the handset.

Or select "**Hands-free mode**" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.

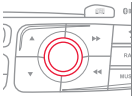


2b



Select "**Put call on hold**" and confirm to put the current call on hold.

Or select "**Resume the call**" and confirm to resume the call on hold.



2c



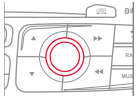
Select "**DTMF ring tones**" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.



2d



Select "**Hang up**" to end the call.





it is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "**Conference mode call**" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.



* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Managing paired telephones

1

PHONE

Press **PHONE** twice.



2

Select "**Bluetooth functions**".



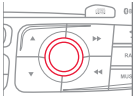
3

Select "**List of the paired peripherals**" and confirm.

It is possible to:

- "**Connect**" or "**Disconnect**" the selected telephone,
- delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

It is also possible to select all pairings.



Changing the ringtone

1

PHONE

Press **PHONE** twice.



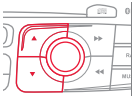
2

Select "**Phone functions**" and confirm.



3

Select "**Ring options**" and confirm.



4

You can adjust the volume and the type of ringtone.



5

Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu



Press **RADIO**.



A long press on **LIST** refreshes the list of stations received.

"FM / AM band / DAB"

Alphabetical list of stations received.

"Change waveband" (**"AM / FM / DAB"**)

"Guidance options" (**"TA, RDS, FM alternative frequencies / DAB"**)

"Audio settings" (see this section)

"Update radio list"



Press ▲ or ▼ or use the rotary control to select the previous or next station in the list.



This list can also be displayed by pressing **LIST** on the steering mounted controls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



07 RADIO

Changing waveband

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park…) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.

1



Press **RADIO** or **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2



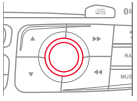
Select "**Change waveband**".



3



Select "**AM / FM**" and confirm.



Selecting a station



The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO** or **LIST**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



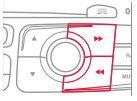
1b



By automatic frequency search

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.



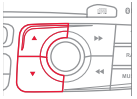


1c



By manual frequency search

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the radio frequency step by step.



07 RADIO

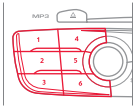
Presetting a station

1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.





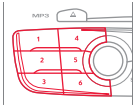
2



Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.







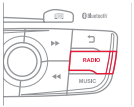
Activate / Deactivate RDS

! RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



Press **RADIO**.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3



Activate or deactivate "**RDS**" then confirm.



DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) Digital radio

Digital radio provides a higher quality reception and also the graphical display of information for the radio station, by selecting "Video mode" in "Radio favourites" (Options).

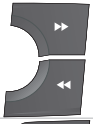
The different radio multiplex services offer a choice of stations displayed in alphabetical order.

1 

Press "**RADIO**".

2 
Select "**Change band**" and confirm.

3 
Selection "**DAB**" and confirm.


Change of station in the same "multiplex".


Manual search for a "multiplex".

Digital radio - DAB/FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if one exists).

1 

Press "**RADIO**".

2 
Select "**Options**" and confirm.

3 
Select "**FM/DAB**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio with sometimes a variation in volume.

Display of the "DAB" band then becomes "DAB (FM)".

When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

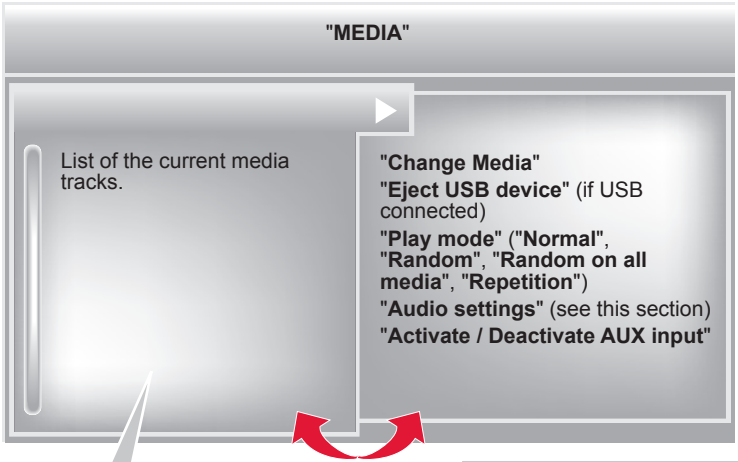
If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYER" menu



Press **MUSIC**.





This list can also be displayed by pressing **LIST** at the steering mounted controls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB player

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u…) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are greater than 32 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format (udf, …), it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied).

If a partitioned USB memory key is connected to the system, only the first partition is recognised.

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

The number of tracks is limited to 2000 maximum, 999 tracks per folder.

If the current consumption at the USB port exceeds 500 mA, the system goes into protection mode and deactivates the port.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).





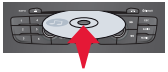
In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted FAT 16 or 32.

The system does not support the operation of an Apple® player and a USB memory stick connected at the same time.

It is recommended that official Apple® USB cables are used to ensure correct operation.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Sources



Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.



The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

Selection of source

The **SOURCE** button on the steering mounted controls allows a direct change to the next media source.



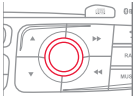
1 

Press **MUSIC** to display the **"MEDIA"** menu.



2 

Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.

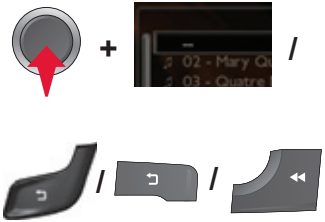


Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible either with **SOURCE** or **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING A TRACK

Previous track.	
Next track.	
Previous folder.	
Next folder.	
Fast forward.	Long press 
Fast backward.	Long press 
Pause: long press on **SRC**.	

LIST: List of USB or CD tracks or folders	
Up or down in the list.	
Confirm, next menu level.	
Up one menu level.	

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Connecting APPLE® players

1 Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

2 Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.
The "Shuffle tracks" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random" mode on the audio system.
The "Shuffle albums" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random all" on the audio system.
"Shuffle tracks" is restored by default on each connection.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1 Connect the telephone: see "**USING THE TELEPHONE**".
Select "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

2 If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK/RCA AUDIO CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player…) to the RCA audio sockets (white and red) using a JACK-RCA audio cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MUSIC**" menu.

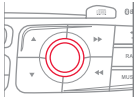


3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

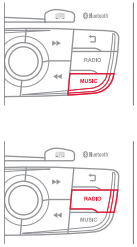
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

09 AUDIO SETTINGS

1



They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.



2

- "**Equalizer**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**")
- "**Le-Ri balance**" (Left/Right)
- "**Fr-Re balance**" (Front/Rear)
- "**Auto. Volume**" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.

The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

!

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging.

With Sound Staging, the driver and passengers are immersed in an "audio scene" recreating the natural atmosphere of an auditorium: truly a part of the scene and its surroundings.

This new sensation is made possible by software in the audio system which processes the digital signals from the media players (radio, CD, MP3…) without changing the audio settings. This processing takes account of the characteristics of the passenger compartment to produce optimum results.

The Arkamys© software installed in your audio system processes the digital signal from the media players (radio, CD, MP3, …) and recreates a natural musical scene, with harmonious placement of instruments and voices in the space in front of passengers, level with the windscreen.

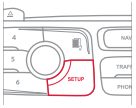
10 CONFIGURATION

Display configuration

1



Press **SETUP** to display the "**Configuration**" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.



3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness.

Press "**OK**" to save the changes.

The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B…**

"NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE" MENU

- 1 **Select destination**
  - 2 **Enter an address**
  - 2 **Directory**
  - 2 **GPS coordinates**
- 1 **Journey leg and route**
  - 2 **Add a stage**
    - 3 Enter an address
    - 3 Directory
    - 3 Previous destinations
  - 2 **Order/delete journey legs**
  - 2 **Divert route**
  - 2 **Chosen destination**
- 1 **Guidance options**
  - 2 **Define calculation criteria**
    - 3 Fastest route
    - 3 Shortest route
    - 3 Distance/Time
    - 3 With tolls
    - 3 With Ferry
    - 3 Traffic info
  - 2 **Set speech synthesis**
  - 2 **Delete last destinations**
  - 2 **Set parameters for risk areas**
- 1 **Map management**
  - 2 **Map orientation**
    - 3 Vehicle direction
    - 3 North direction
    - 3 Perspective view
  - 2 **Map details**
  - 2 **Move the map**
  - 2 **Mapping and updating**
  - 2 **Description of risk areas database**
- 1 **Stop / Restore guidance**
  - 2 **Fastest route**
  - 2 **Shortest route**
  - 2 **Distance/Time**
  - 2 **With tolls**
  - 2 **With Ferry**
  - 2 **Traffic info**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"TRAFFIC INFORMATION" MENU

- 1 **Geographic filter**
  - 2 **Retain all the messages:**
  - 2 **Retain the messages:**
    - 3 Around the vehicle
    - 3 On the route
- 1 **Select TMC station**
  - 2 **Automatic TMC**
  - 2 **Manual TMC**
  - 2 **List of TMC stations**
- 1 **Display / Do not display messages**

"TELEPHONE" MENU

- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **Directory of contacts**
  - 2 **Call**
  - 2 **Open**
  - 2 **Import**
  - 2 **Delete**
  - 2 **Cancel**
- 1 **Contacts management**
  - 2 **New contact**
  - 2 **Sort by Name/First name**
  - 2 **Delete all contacts**
  - 2 **Import all the entries**
  - 2 **Synchronization options**
    - 3 No synchronization
    - 3 Display telephone contacts
    - 3 Display SIM card contacts
    - 3 Display all phone contacts
  - 2 **Contact mem. status**
- 1 **Phone functions**
  - 2 **Ring options**
  - 2 **Delete calls log**
- 1 **Bluetooth functions**
  - 2 **List of the paired peripherals**
    - 3 Connect
    - 3 Disconnect
    - 3 Delete
    - 3 Delete all
    - 3 Cancel
  - 2 **Peripherals search**
  - 2 **Rename radiotelephone**
- 1 **Hang up**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"RADIO" MENU

- 1 **Change Waveband**
  - 2 **FM / DAB / AM**
- 1 **Guidance options**
  - 2 **TA**
  - 2 **RDS options**
  - 2 **FM/DAB** (auto tracking)
  - 2 **Video mode**
- 1 **Audio settings**
  - 2 **Equalizer**
    - 3 None
    - 3 Classical
    - 3 Jazz
    - 3 Rock
    - 3 Techno
    - 3 Vocal
  - 2 **Bass**
  - 2 **Treble**
  - 2 **Loudness**
    - 3 Activated / Deactivated
  - 2 **Distribution**
    - 3 Driver
    - 3 All passengers
  - 2 **Le-Ri balance**
  - 2 **Fr-Re balance**
  - 2 **Auto. Volume**
    - 3 Activated / Deactivated
- 1 **Update radio list**

"MUSIC" MENU

- 1 **Change Media**
  - 2 **CD**
  - 2 **BT Streaming**
  - 2 **USB/iPod**
  - 2 **AUX**
- 1 **Audio settings**
  - 2 **Activate / Deactivate AUX input**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"SETUP" MENU

- 1 **Sound choice**
  - 2 Classic
  - 2 Crystal symphony
  - 2 Urban rythmik
  - 2 Jungle fantasy
- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 Choose colour
  - 2 Adjust luminosity
  - 2 Set date and time
  - 2 Select units
- 1 **Speech synthesis setting**
  - 2 Guidance instructions volume
  - 2 Select male voice/Select female voice
- 1 **Select language**
- 1 **Define vehicle parameters***
- 1 **Alert log**

* Depending on vehicle equipment.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".
I am unable to enter my post code.	The system only accepts post codes of up to 5 characters.	
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways…) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel…) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.citroen.co.uk (services)
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, …).

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, …). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the information and advice in the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed…).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks…) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).	
The name of the radio station changes.	The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD…).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD…).	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
When I connect my Apple® player or my BlackBerry® to the USB port, I have alert messages on the current consumption by the USB port.	When charging, the current consumption of these smartphones is greater than the rating of the USB port, which is 500 mA.	



AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH

The system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	290
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	291
03	Main menu	p.	292
04	Audio	p.	293
05	Using the telephone	p.	304
06	Audio settings	p.	312
07	Screen menu map	p.	314
	Frequently asked questions	p.	317

01 FIRST STEPS

Select screen display between modes:

Full screen: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) /

In a window: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) - Time or Trip computer.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Display the list of stations received, CD/MP3 tracks or folders.

Long press: managing the classification of MP3/WMA files / update the list of stations received.

Manual step by step search up / down for radio frequencies.

Select previous / next MP3 folder.

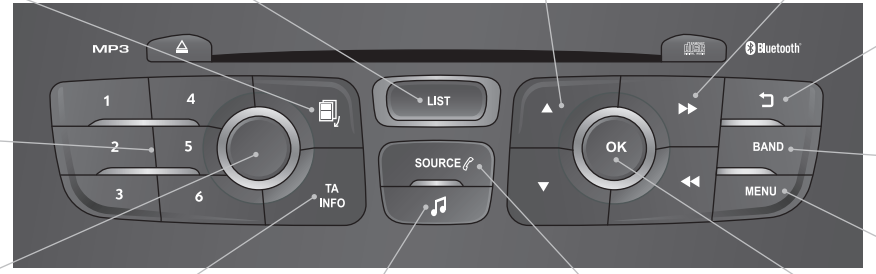
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist in the USB device.

Navigation in a list.

Automatic search up / down for radio frequencies.

Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.

Navigation in a list.



Abandon the current operation.

Up one level (menu or folder).

Select preset radio station.

Long press: store a station.

Selection of AM / FM / DAB* wavebands.

Access to main menu.

On / Off.

Volume adjustment.

TA (Traffic Announcement) function On / Off.

Long press: access to type of information.

Audio settings:

audio ambiences, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume.

Select source:

Radio, CD, AUX, USB, Streaming.

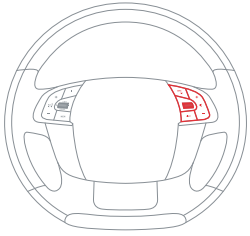
Accept an incoming call.

Confirmation or display of contextual menu.

* Depending on model.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

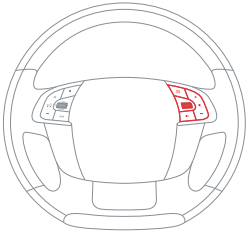
Audio system





	- Short press: mute: change multimedia source. - Long press: mute / restore sound.
	- Rotation: Radio: automatic search for the previous / next station. Media: previous / next track. - Press: confirmation.
	- Short press: Radio: display the list of stations. Media: display the list of tracks. - Long press: update the list of stations received.
	- Increase volume. - Decrease volume.

Audio / Bluetooth telephone system





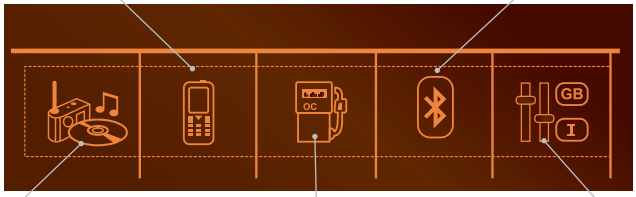
	- Short press: Change multimedia source. Accept an incoming call. Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode). - Long press: Reject an incoming call. End a call in progress. No call in progress: access to the telephone menu (Call, Contacts, call log, Voice mail).
	- Rotation. Radio: automatic search for the previous / next station. Media: previous / next track. - Press: confirmation.
	- Short press: Radio: display the list of stations. Media: display the list of tracks. - Long press: update the list of stations received.
	- Increase volume. - Decrease volume.

03 MAIN MENU

Screen C

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Bluetooth connection**": Connections management, Search for a device.



"**Multimedia**": Media parameters, Radio parameters.

"**Trip computer**": Warning log.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

Screen A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to "Screen menu map" section.

04 AUDIO

Radio

Selecting a station

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

1



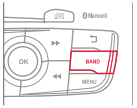
Press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select radio.



2



Press **BAND** to select a waveband.





Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.



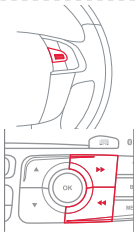


Select the desired radio station and confirm by pressing **OK**.





A press changes to the next or previous letter (e.g. A, B, D, F, G, J, K, ...).



1



A long press on **LIST** builds or updates the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.



04 AUDIO

RDS

RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1 

When the radio is displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2 

Select "**RDS**" and confirm to save.
"**RDS**" is displayed in the screen.



Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

Press **TA INFO** to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.



Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

1 

Make a long press on **TA INFO** to display the list of categories.



2 

Select or deselect categories to activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.



04 AUDIO

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

Screen C

1



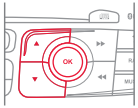
With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2



Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.



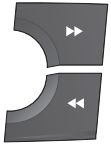
Screen A

3

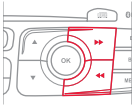


Select "**MEDIA**" and confirm.





Then select "**TEXT INFO**" and press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to select "**ON**" or "**OFF**" and confirm to save the modifications.



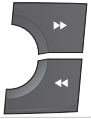
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) Digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).

The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.



Change band (FM1, FM2, DAB, ...)



Change of station within the same "multiplex service".



Start a search for the next "multiplex service".



Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.

(Frequency hopping (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

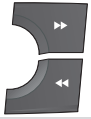
Digital radio - DAB / FM tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if it exists).

1 

Press the "**Menu**" button.

2 

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

3 

Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.

When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB"

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

04 AUDIO

Audio CD

Playing a CD

Insert 12 cm diameter circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the **EJECT** button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

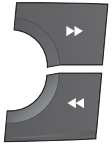
1



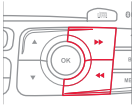
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



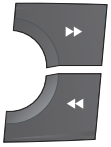
!



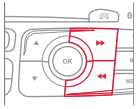
Press **LIST** to display the list of tracks on the CD.



3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



04 AUDIO

CD, USB

Information and advice



The audio system will only play files with extension ".mp3" or ".wma" and a compression rate that is constant or variable between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.



The playlists accepted are types .m3u and .pls.

The number of files is limited to 5 000 in 500 directories on a maximum of 8 levels.



On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.

During play, the folder structure is not observed.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port. This may cause damage to your installation.

04 AUDIO

CD, USB

Playing a compilation



Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player or connect a memory stick to the USB port, directly or via an extension lead.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory) the creation time for which can take from a few seconds to several minutes.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.



At a first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the order previously chosen is retained.

1



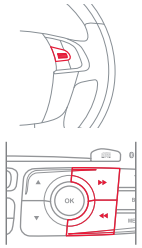
To play a disc or memory stick which has already been inserted, press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select **"CD"** or **"USB"**.



2



Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous track.



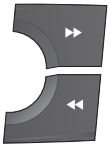
3



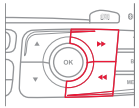
Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.



4



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or backwards.



5



Press **LIST** to display the menu of folders in the compilation.



6





Select a line in the list.





7



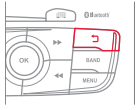
Select a track or a folder.



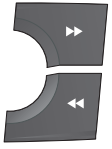
8



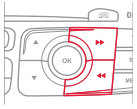
Up a level in the menu.



9



Skip a track.



USB memory stick - File sorting

1



Make a long press on **LIST** or press **MENU**, select "**Multimedia**", then "**Media parameters**" and finally "**Choice of track listing**" to display the different types of sorting.



2



Having selected the desired sorting ("**By folders**", "**By artists**", "**By genres**", "**By playlists**") press **OK**.

Then confirm **OK** to save the modifications.



- **By folders**: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- **By artists**: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- **By genres**: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- **By playlists**: if playlists have been saved.





04 AUDIO

APPLE® players or portable player



The audio files on a Mass Storage portable player* can be heard through the vehicle's speakers by connecting it to the USB port (cable not supplied).

Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

If the portable player is not recognised by the USB port, connect it to the auxiliary Jack socket.

The Apple® player must be updated regularly for the best connection.

The playlists are those defined in the Apple® player.

The Apple® player must be generation 5 or later.

* Check your player's manual.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Auxiliary Jack socket

The auxiliary Jack socket permits the connection of a portable non-mass storage device or an Apple® player if not recognised by the USB port.

Do not connect a device to the USB port and to the auxiliary Jack socket at the same time.

1 Connect the portable device to the auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2 

Press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".



3 First adjust the volume on your portable device.



4 

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.



The display and management of controls is on the portable device.



04 AUDIO

Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

Depending on the compatibility of the phone

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

The telephone must support the appropriate bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

1



Pair/connect the telephone: see the "USING THE TELEPHONE" section.

2



Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE** or **SRC**. Control of playback is via the audio system. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

In certain cases, playing of the audio files must be initiated from the telephone.

The audio quality depends on the quality of the transmission from the telephone.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

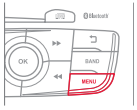
1



Press **OK** for access to the contextual menu.

or

Press **MENU**.



2



Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Media parameters**" and confirm.



4



Select "**Read mode**" and confirm.



5



Select the desired play mode and confirm **OK** to save the modifications.



05 USING THE TELEPHONE

Pairing a telephone
First connection

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.
Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

1

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone user guide).



2



Press **MENU**.



3



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.



4



Select "**Search for a device**".



5

A window is displayed "**Search in progress…**"

6



Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.



05 USING THE TELEPHONE

In some cases, the reference number of the telephone or the Bluetooth address may appear instead of the name of the telephone.

7



A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits and conform with **OK**.



8

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.



If pairing fails, try again; the number of attempts is not limited.

9

Accept the connection to the telephone.

10

A message appears in the screen to confirm the result of the connection.

Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for detected Bluetooth devices.

The directory and the calls list can be accessed after the synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible).

Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

1

Pair/connect the telephone then listen: see the AUDIO section.

05 USING THE TELEPHONE

Managing connections

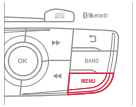
The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

1



Press **MENU**.



2



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.



Indicates that a device is connected.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates connection of the hands-free profile.

4



Select a telephone and confirm.



5



Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free connection only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect only streaming.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.



05 USING THE TELEPHONE

Making a call - Dialling

1



To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make along press on **SOURCE** or **SRC**.
- Or, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.



2



Select "**Dial**" to enter a number and confirm.



3



Select numbers one at a time using the ◀◀ and ▶▶ buttons and confirm.



Correction allows numbers to be deleted one at a time.

4



Select **OK** and confirm to start the call.



Making a call - Recently called numbers*

1



To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
- Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.



2



Select "**Calls list**" and confirm.



3



Select the number and confirm to start the call.



The calls list includes calls sent and received in the vehicle using the connected telephone.

It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

05 USING THE TELEPHONE

Making a call - From the directory of contacts

1



To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:

- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
- Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.



2



Select "**Directory**" and confirm.



3



Select a contact then confirm.

Home

Business

Mobile

(depending on the information available in the contact records of the telephone connected).



4



Select the number and confirm.



Receiving a call

1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the multifunction screen.

2



"**YES**" to accept the call is selected by default.

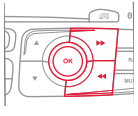
Press **OK** to accept the call.

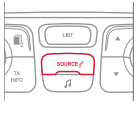
Select "**NO**" and confirm to reject the call.

or



Press one of these buttons to accept the call.









A long press on **ESC** or on **TEL**, **SOURCE** or **SRC** also rejects an incoming call.





05 USING THE TELEPHONE

Managing calls

1



During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.



Hang up

2a



In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.





A long press on one of these buttons also ends the call.





Secret - Mute

(so that the caller cannot hear)

2b



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.



Combined mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)

2c



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.



In certain cases, the combined mode has to activated from the telephone.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

Interactive voice response

2d



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.



Consultation call

2e



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and conform to return to a call left on hold.



05 USING THE TELEPHONE

Directory

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on compatibility, and while the Bluetooth connection with it is maintained.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

1





Make a long press on **SOURCE** or **SRC** for access to the directory

or press **OK**, and

select "**Call**" and confirm.





2



Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.



3



To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.

Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".



06 AUDIO SETTINGS

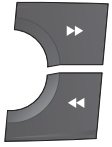
Screen A



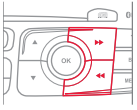
1 

Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.



2 

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to modify the selected setting.



3 

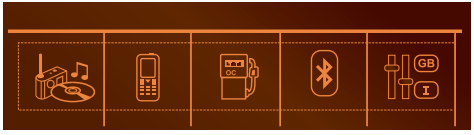
Press ▲ or ▼ for the previous or next setting in the list.



The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are separate and independent for each sound source.

06 AUDIO SETTINGS

Screen C



1 Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.



2 The settings available are:

- Ambience,
- Bass,
- Treble,
- Loudness,
- Distribution: Personalised or Driver,
- Left / right balance,
- Fader (front / rear balance),
- Auto. volume.

3 

Select and confirm "**Other settings…**" to display the next setting in the list.



The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system), is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging.

With Sound Staging, the driver and passengers are immersed in an "audio scene" recreating the natural atmosphere of an auditorium: truly a part of the scene and its surroundings.

This new sensation is made possible by software in the audio system which processes the digital signals from the media players (radio, CD, MP3…) without changing the audio settings. This processing takes account of the characteristics of the passenger compartment to produce optimum results.

The Arkamys© software installed in your audio system processes the digital signal from the media players (radio, CD, MP3, ...) and recreates a natural musical scene, with harmonious placement of instruments and voices in the space in front of passengers, level with the windscreen.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

Screen A

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 Option A
  - 2 Option A1
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 Option B...

RADIO

- 1 RDS options
- 1 Infotext
- 1 Radiotext

TRIP COMPUTER

- 1 Diagnostics

DATE AND TIME

MEDIA

- 1 Read mode
  - 2 Normal
  - 2 Random
  - 2 Random all

LANGUAGES

- 1 Français
  - 2 Italiano
  - 2 Nederlands
  - 2 Português
  - 2 Português-brasil
  - 2 Deutsch
  - 2 English
  - 2 Español

VEHICLE PARAM*

* Depending on vehicle equipment.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

Screen C

MULTIMEDIA

- 1 **Media parameters**
  - 2 **Choice of playback mode**
    - 3 Normal
    - 3 Random
    - 3 Random all
    - 3 Repeat
  - 2 **Choice of track listing**
    - 3 By folders
    - 3 By artists
    - 3 By genres
    - 3 By playlists
- 1 **Radio parameters**

TELEPHONE

- 1 **Call**
  - 2 **Dial**
  - 2 **Directory**
  - 2 **Calls list**
  - 2 **Voice mail box**
- 1 **Directory management**
  - 2 **Consult an entry**
  - 2 **Delete an entry**
  - 2 **Delete all entries**
- 1 **Telephone management**
  - 2 **Telephone status**
- 1 **Hang up**

TRIP COMPUTER

- 1 **Vehicle diagnosis**

BLUETOOTH CONNECTION

- 1 **Connections management**
- 1 **Search for a device**

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

PERSONALISATION - CONFIGURATION

- 1 **Define the vehicle parameters***
- 1 **Choice of language**
- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 **Choice of units**
  - 2 **Date and time adjustment**
  - 2 **Display parameters**
  - 2 **Brightness**
- 1 **Choice of sounds**

* Depending on vehicle equipment.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, treble and bass are reset to zero.	Choosing an ambience imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambience setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.	Choosing a distribution setting imposes a balance setting. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.	It is possible that Bluetooth is switched off on the telephone or that the telephone has not been made not visible.	- Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. - Check in the telephone's settings that it is "Visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The message "USB device error" is displayed on the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick (FAT 32).
A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.	Automatic connection overrides manual connection.	Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.
The Apple® player is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	The Apple® player is of a generation that is not compatible with the USB.	Connect the Apple® player to the AUX Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
When I connect my Apple® player or my BlackBerry® to the USB port, I have alert messages on the current consumption by the USB port.	When charging, the current consumption of these smartphones is greater than the rating of the USB port, which is 500 mA.	
The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.	Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply. **Caution**: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).
When streaming, the sound cuts momentarily.	Some telephones prioritise connection of the "hands-free" profile.	Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

400
400
500
400
400
500

EXTERIOR



Remote control 79-85
- opening / closing
- antitheft protection
- starting
- battery

Accessories 222-223
Roof bars 217
Panoramic sunroof 94

Door mirrors..... 76-77
Blind spot sensors 172-174

Wiper controls..... 107-109
Changing a wiper blade..... 216

Lighting controls 98-102
Headlamp adjustment..... 104
Welcome lighting 103
Directional lighting systems 105-106
Changing bulbs..... 203-206
- front lamps
- front foglamps
- side repeaters

Boot 80, 91
Temporary puncture repair kit..... 193-197
Changing a wheel..... 198-201
- tools
- removing / refitting

Snow chains 202

Doors 86, 90
- opening / closing
- emergency control

Child lock 138
Electric windows 92-93
Alarm 88-89

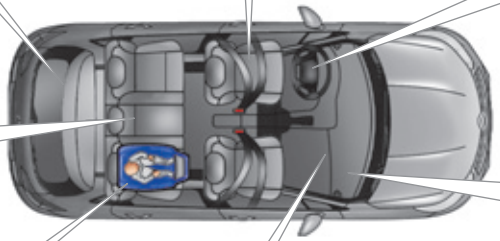
Changing bulbs..... 207-208
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamp

Parking sensors..... 182-183
Parking space sensors 180-181
Towbar 220
Towing 218-219

Braking assistance 140
Trajectory control..... 141-142
Tyre under-inflation detection ... 166-167
Tyre pressures..... 197, 231

Fuel tank..... 95-96
Misfuel prevention 97

INTERIOR



Front seats..... 70-74
Seat belts..... 143-145

Boot fittings..... 121-123
- rear parcel shelf
- hooks
- 12 V socket
- torch
- lashing eyes
- storage compartment

Luggage cover (C4 enterprise)..... 124

Airbags 146-149

Rear seats 75
Rear armrest / Ski flap..... 120

Glove box 113
Deactivating the passenger's airbag..... 147

Child seats..... 125-133
ISOFIX mountings 134-136

Interior fittings.....112-120
- auxiliary socket / USB port
- 12 V socket
- front armrest
- 230 V / 50 Hz socket
- mats

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Instrument panels 28-31
Warning lamps 32-42
Indicators 43-45
Setting buttons 46-48
- trip distance recorder
- dashboard lighting dimmer / black panel
- customisation of dials and screens

Stop & Start 168-170
Lane departure warning system 171

Lighting controls 98-102
Adjusting headlamps 104

Door mirrors 76-77
Electric windows 92-93

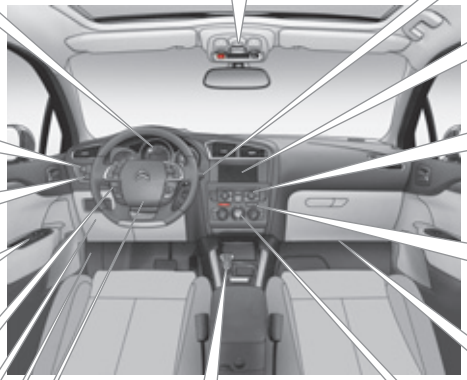
Memorising speeds 175
Speed limiter 176-177
Cruise control 178-179

Dashboard fuses 209-211

Opening the bonnet 185

Adjusting the steering wheel 78
Horn 139

Rear view mirror 78
Emergency or assistance call 142, 233
Seat belt and front passenger airbag warning display screen 143-145
Courtesy lamps 110



Manual gearbox 157
Electronic gearbox 158-160
Automatic gearbox 161-163
Parking brake 150-156, 157

Wiper controls 107-109
Trip computer 57-60

Multifunction screens 49-56

Audio system 289-321
Setting the date / time 50, 54
eMyWay satellite navigation system 235-288
Setting the date / time 56

Hazard warning lamps 139
Central locking 86-87
Black panel 47

Interior mood lighting 111

Ventilation 61-62
Manual air conditioning 63-64, 69
Digital air conditioning 65-68, 69
Demisting / Defrosting the rear screen 69

TECHNICAL DATA - MAINTENANCE



Petrol engines 224-225
Diesel engines 226-229
Dimensions 230
Identification markings 231

Running out of Diesel fuel 186

Battery 213-215
Energy economy mode 216

Checking levels 189-190
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- power steering fluid
- screenwash / headlamp wash fluid
- additive (Diesel with particle emissions filter)

Engine compartment fuses 209, 212

Changing bulbs 203-208
- front
- rear

Bonnet 185
Petrol underbonnet 187
Diesel underbonnet 188

Checking components 191-192
- battery
- air filter / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle emissions filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A
ABS and EBFD systems 140
Accessories 222
Accessory socket, 12V 114, 115, 118, 122
Adjusting headlamps 104
Adjusting head restraints 72
Adjusting seat belt height ... 143, 144
Adjusting the steering wheel 78
Airbags, curtain 148, 149
Airbags, front 146, 149
Airbags, lateral 148, 149
Air conditioning 26
Air conditioning, digital 62, 65
Air conditioning, manual 62, 63
Air filter 191
Air flow 61
Air vents 61
Alarm 88
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 140
Anti-pinch 92, 94
Anti-theft 82
Armrest, front 116, 117
Armrest, rear 120
Assistance call 142, 233, 234
Audible warning 139
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 275, 303, 305
Audio system 49, 51, 289
Automatic illumination of headlamps 99, 102
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 139
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 107, 108
Auxiliary socket 114, 276, 302

B
Battery 191, 213-215
Battery, charging 215
Battery, remote control 83-85
Black panel 47
Blind spot sensors 172
Bluetooth (hands-free) 258, 304
Bluetooth (telephone) 258, 304
Bonnet 185
Bonnet stay 185
Boot 91
Boot lamp 111, 123
Brake discs 192
Brake lamps 207
Brake pads 192
Braking assistance system 140

C
Capacity, fuel tank 95
CD 272, 297
CD MP3 ..... 272, 298
Central locking 81, 86
Centre console 115
Changing a bulb 203-208
Changing a fuse 209-212
Changing a wheel 198-201
Changing a wiper blade 109, 216
Changing the date 46, 50, 54, 56
Changing the remote control battery 83, 84
Changing the time 46, 50, 54, 56
Checking levels 189, 190
Checking the engine oil level 43, 189
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 197
Checks 185-192
Child lock 138
Children 125-138, 145, 147
Child seats 125-137
Child seats, conventional 131
CITROËN Localised Assistance Call 234
CITROËN Localised Emergency Call 234
Clock 46, 50, 54, 56
Closing the boot 81, 91
Closing the doors 81, 90
Cold climate screen 217
Colour screen 55
Connectors, audio 114, 276, 300, 302
Coolant level 189
Courtesy lamps 103, 110
Courtesy mirror 113
Cruise control 175, 178
Cup holder 115

D
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) 270, 296
Date (setting) 46, 50, 54, 56
Daytime running lamps 99, 203, 205
Deactivating the passenger airbag 147
Defrosting 69
Diesel additive level 190
Dimensions 230
Dipped beam 98, 203, 205
Dipstick 43, 189
Directional lighting 105, 106
Direction indicators 101, 139, 203, 204, 206, 207
Doors 90
Doors emergency control 87

Door pockets 112
Driving economically 26
Driving positions (storing) 74
Dynamic emergency braking 153

E EBA (Emergency braking assistance) 140
Eco-driving 26
Economy mode 216
Electric window controls 92
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 140
Electronic engine immobiliser 82, 85
Electronic gearbox 158, 168, 192
Electronic stability control (ESC) 141
Emergency boot release 91
Emergency braking system 140
Emergency call 142, 233, 234
Emergency starting 213
Emergency warning lamps 139
eMyWay 55, 235
Energy economy mode 216
Engine compartment 187, 188
Engine compartment fusebox 212
Engine, Diesel 96, 186, 188, 226
Engine oil level indicator 43, 189
Engine, petrol 96, 187, 224
Engines 224, 226
Environment 26, 62, 69, 85, 163, 166, 190
Equipment settings 50, 52, 56
ESC/ASR 141
ESP 141

F Filling with fuel 95-97
Fitting a wheel 201
Fitting roof bars 217
Fittings, boot 121, 124
Fitting speakers 221
Flashing indicators 101, 139, 204, 206, 207
Foglamps, front 100, 106, 203, 206
Foglamps, rear 100, 207
Front seats 70, 71, 74
Fuel 26, 96
Fuel consumption 26
Fuel filler flap 95, 97
Fuel gauge 28, 95
Fuel tank 95, 97
Fusebox, dashboard 210
Fuses 209

G Gearbox, automatic ... 161, 192, 215
Gearbox, electronic ... 158, 192, 215
Gearbox, manual 157, 168, 192
Gear efficiency indicator 165
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 161
Gear lever, electronic gearbox 158
Gear lever, manual gearbox 157
Glove box 113
G.P.S. 241
Grab handles 112
Guidance 241

H Halogen headlamps 203
Hands-free kit 258, 304
Hazard warning lamps 139
Headlamp adjustment 104
Headlamps, directional 104, 105, 203
Headlamp wash 108
Head restraints, front 72
Head restraints, rear 75
Heated seats 72
Heating 63, 65
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel 78
Hill start assist 164
Hooks 122

I Ignition 82
Indicator lamps, status 32-42
Indicators, direction 139, 204
Inflating accessories (using the kit) 197
Inflating tyres 26, 230
Inputs for audio system 114, 276, 302
Installing speakers 221
Instrument panel lighting 47
Instrument panels 28-30, 48
Instrument panel screen 28-30, 165
Intelligent Traction Control 141
Interior fittings 112, 113
Interior mood lighting 111
ISOFIX 134
ISOFIX child seats 134-136
ISOFIX mountings 134

J Jack 198
JACK socket 114, 276, 302

K Keeping children safe 125-138, 145, 147
Key in ignition warning 82
Key with remote control 79, 81, 82, 85

L Labels, identification 231
Lamps, warning and indicator 32, 39, 42
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 171
Level, brake fluid 189
Level, power steering fluid 189
Levels and checks 185-192
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 203-208
Lighting control stalk 98, 101
Lighting dimmer 28-30, 47
Lighting, guide-me home 101, 102
Lighting, interior 110, 111
Loading 26, 217
Load reduction mode 216
Load space cover 124
Locating your vehicle 81
Locking from the inside 86
Locking the boot 91
Long objects, transporting 120
Luggage retaining strap 121

M Main beam 98, 203, 205
Maintenance 26
Map reading lamps 110
Markings, identification 231
Massage function 73
Mat 119
Menu, main 292
Mini fuel level 95
Mirror, rear view 78
Mirrors, door 76, 77, 172
Misfuel prevention 97
Mountings for ISOFIX seats 134
MP3 CD 272, 298
Music media players 271

N Navigation 241
Number plate lamps 208

O Oil filter 191
Oil level 43, 189
Opening the bonnet 185
Opening the boot 91
Opening the doors 90
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind 94
Operation indicator lamps 32-42

P Paint colour code 231
Panoramic glass sunroof 94
Parcel shelf, rear 122, 124
Parking brake 157, 192
Parking brake, electric 150, 192
Parking lamps 101
Parking sensors, front 183
Parking sensors, rear 182
Parking space sensor 180
Particle emission filter 190-191
Passenger compartment filter 191
Personalisation 48
Player, CD MP3 ..... 272, 298
Port, USB 114, 300
Priming the fuel system 186
Protecting children 125-138, 145, 147
Puncture 193

R Radio 267, 293
Radio pre-equipment 221
RCA sockets 114, 276, 302
Rear screen (demisting) 69
Recharging the battery 215
Reduction of electrical load 216
Regeneration of the particle emissions filter 191
Reinitialising the electric windows 92
Reinitialising the remote control 83, 84
Remote control 79-85
Removable screen (snow shield) 217
Removing a wheel 200
Removing the mat 119
Repair kit, puncture 193
Replacing bulbs 203-208
Replacing fuses 209-212
Replacing the air filter 191
Replacing the oil filter 191
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 191

Replacing wiper blades 109, 216
Resetting the service indicator 45
Resetting the trip recorder 46
Rev counter 28-31
Reversing lamps 207
Risk areas (update) 246
Roof bars 217
Roof blind 94
Routine checks 191, 192
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 186

S Safety for children ...125-138, 145, 147
Satellite navigation system 55, 241
Screen, colour and mapping 56, 59, 239, 279
Screen menu map 279, 314-316
Screen, monochrome 49, 51, 314
Screen, multifunction (with audio equipment) 49, 51, 55, 292
Screenwash, front 108
Seat adjustment 70, 71
Seat belts 143-145
Seat, rear bench 75
Seats, electric 71
Seats, rear 75
Selector lever, electronic gearbox 158
Serial number, vehicle 231
Service indicator 44
Servicing 26
Setting the clock 46, 50, 54, 56
Short-cut menus 240
Sidelamps 98, 101, 203, 205, 207
Side repeater 206
Ski flap 120
Snow chains 202
Spare wheel 198
Speakers (fitting) 221
Speed limiter 175, 176
Speedometer 28-30
Spotlamps, side 103, 206
Starting using another battery ... 213
Starting the vehicle 82, 158, 161
Steering mounted controls ... 238, 291
Stopping the vehicle 82, 158, 161
Stop & Start 60, 66, 69, 95, 168, 185, 191, 213
Storage 112, 113, 115-117, 121
Storage compartments 115
Storage drawer 119
Storage net 121
Storing driving positions 74
Stowing rings 121
Sun visor 113
Synchronising the remote control 83, 84
Synthesiser, voice 252
System, navigation 241

T Table of weights 225, 227
Tables of engines 224, 226
Tables of fuses 209
Tank, fuel 97
Technical data 224, 231
Telephone 258, 304
Temperature control for heated seats 72
Temporary tyre repair kit 193
Three flashes function (direction indicators) 139
Ticket holder 112
TMC (Traffic info) 255
Tools 198
Torch 123
Total distance recorder 46
Towbar 220
Towed loads 225, 227
Towing another vehicle 219
Traction control (ASR) 141
Traffic information (TA) 256, 294
Traffic information (TMC) 255, 256
Trailer 220
Trajectory control systems 141
Trip computer 57-60
Trip distance recorder 46
Tyre pressures 231
Tyres 26
Tyre under-inflation detection 166

U Under floor storage 123
Under-inflation (detection) 166
Unlocking from the inside 86
Unlocking the boot 79, 80, 91
Unlocking the doors 79, 80
Update risk areas 246
Updating the time 46, 50, 54, 56
USB port 114

V Vehicle configuration 50, 52, 56, 67
Ventilation 61, 62, 64

W Warning lamps..... 32-42
Wash-wipe, rear 109
Weights..... 225, 227
Welcome lighting 103
Window controls 92
Wiper control stalk..... 107-109
Wiper, rear..... 109
Wipers 41, 107, 108

X Xenon headlamps..... 203

This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of this equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this handbook is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
05-13

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6 rue Fructidor - 75835 Paris Cedex 17 - France
TÉL. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroën.fr
S.A. au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. Paris 642 050 199 - Siret 642 050 199 00990 - APE 741 J

WRC FIA WORLD RALLY CHAMPIONSHIP
9 WORLD RALLY CHAMPION DRIVER TITLES SEBASTIEN LOEB DRIVER CLASSIFICATION
8 WORLD RALLY CHAMPION MANUFACTURER TITLES CITROËN MANUFACTURER CLASSIFICATION

13B71.0040
Anglais

2013 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD
4Dconcept
Diadeis
Edipro

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

CITROËN